

Gal & Ba
A COMPLEAT and IMPARTIAL

HISTORY

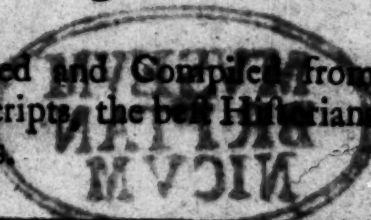
OF THE

ANCIENT BRITONS.

FROM THE

Earliest Account of Time to the End
of the Reign of King HENRY VIII.

Faithfully Collected and Compiled from
ancient Manuscripts, the best Historians
and Antiquaries.



By JOHN OWEN, *K*

Rector of Pickworth in Lincolnshire.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed for the AUTHOR, 1743.

12

A COMMENTARY AND ILLUSTRATION

HISTORY

OF THE

ANCIENT BRITONS.

BY G. M. J. J.

Early Account of Time to the End
of the Reign of King Henry VIII.



Printed by Collier
Ancient Manuscripts
and Antiquaries

BY JOHN O. W. E. N.

Author of the Introduction

VOL. I

LONDON

Printed by A. D. D. D.



TO
Her ROYAL HIGHNESS

THE
PRINCESS of WALES.

MADAM,

IN THE History I have the
Honour to present to your
ROYAL HIGHNESS, seems
naturally to fly to the Protection of

A 2

your

DEDICATION.

your Illustrious House; and I am fully confident of the Favour of the PRINCE of *WALE S*, when I inscribe it to a Consort so justly the Object of his Affection.

THE Ancient *Britons*, or more properly the *Kymry*, have made the brightest Figure in our Annals, having been the most strenuous Defenders of Liberty, against the boldest and most powerful Invasions: And there will never be a Free Country where they will not be highly revered, and spoke of with the greatest Honour. This has induc'd me to throw an Account of them into a regular History; and I hope it will

DEDICATION.

not be deem'd an Offering unworthy the Acceptance of a PRINCESS, whose Ancestors have behav'd so gallantly in the same glorious Cause; who so bravely opposed the Tyranny of the Church of *Rome*, and, by their famous PROTEST, brought about the Reformation in *Germany*.

AN Alliance between the Crown of *England*, at the same time the freest Nation in Being, and the chief Support of the Protestant Interest, with a Family thus distinguished, was the most natural in the World.

DEDICATION.

AND your Royal Highness's Address at your first coming among us, and your Conduct ever since, have so endeared you to the whole *British* People, that I am persuaded they universally sympathize in the PRINCE's Happiness, and unite, how much soever they may differ on other Occasions, in thanking God for the many Blessings his Providence has bestowed on these Kingdoms, by the valuable Increase you have given to his MAJESTY's Family.

THAT your ROYAL HIGHNESS may live to finish your excellent Education of your Offspring, and be
late

DEDICATION.

late taken to the eternal Reward of
your Virtues, is the sincere and fer-
vent Prayer of,

MADAM,

Your ROYAL HIGHNESS'S

Most Dutiful, and

Most obedient humble Servant,

JOHN OWEN.



A

L I S T
O F T H E
S U B S C R I B E R S.

Subscribers for several Books are distinguished by a Dagger after their Names.

A.



IS Grace the Duke of An-
caster

B.

The Right Honourable the Lady Dowager
Bulkeley †
Right Honourable James Lord Viscount
Bulkeley

A

Rev.

Rev. Thomas Blomer, D.D. Rector of Lavington in Lincolnshire, and Chaplain in Ordinary to his Majesty.

Rev. Mr. Charles Montagu Bertie, A. M. Rector of Uffington, Lincolnshire

Mrs. Bennet of Croisenewydd.

William Bodvel, Esq; of Madrin

Thomas Brereton, Esq;

C.

Sir Robert Salisbury Cotton, of Llyweny Bart.

William Carter, of Redbourn, Lincolnshire, Esq;

Rev. Mr. Conway Warden, of Ruthin

Mr. Conway, of Cotton Hall

John Chambres of Plase y Chambres, Esq;

D.

Rev. Mr. Dod, Vicar of Bourn Lincolnshire

Mr. Dempster, Attorney at Brigg, Lincolnshire

Rev. Mr. David Dolben, of Bangor

Mr. Davies of Mold

Mr. Davies, of Broad-street, London, Grocer.

E.

the SUBSCRIBERS.

E.

The Right Honourable the Earl of Exeter
Thomas Edwards, of Brinford, Esq;
Rev. Mr. Edwards, Vicar of Wrexham.
Rev. Mr. Ellis, A.M. Fellow of Jesus Col-
lege, Oxon
Timothy Edwards, of Nanhoran, Esq;

F.

David Foulks, of Gwern y Gron, Esq;
Mr. Foulks, of Mertin
Mr. Foulks, Attorney at Denbigh

G.

Sir Robert Grosvenor, Bart.
Richard Lloyd Gwillim, of Heartsheath,
Esq;
Rev. Mr. Griffiths, Curate of Ruthin
Mr. Gwin, of Salop.
John Griffiths, of Garn, Esq;
Mr. Griffiths, of Mold
William Glegg, of Gayton, Esq;

H.

Mr. Holford, of Flint +
John Hoare, Esq;

A 2

Owen

the SUBSCRIBERS.

xi

Owen Holland, *of Conway, Esq;*
Geoffry Holland, *of Pennant, Esq;*
Mrs. Hutchins, of Chelsea
Rev. Mr. Hughes, A. M. Chaplain to the
Bishop of Bangor
Rev. Mr. Hughes, Rector of LlanCadwalader
Mr. Hughes, of Gweder
Mr. Hughes, of Caermehur
Thomas Hughes, of Halkin, Esq;

I.

Rev. Mr. Jones, Vicar of Llanafaph
Rev. Mr. Jones, Rector of Denbigh
Rev. Mr. Jones, Rector of Llanverres
Rev. Mr. Jones, Usher of Ruthin School
John Jones, of Llwnyney, Esq;
John Jones, of Pentre, Esq;
Rev. Mr. Jones, A. M. Rector of Lland-
deruil
Rev. Mr. Cadwalader Jones, Curate of
Nevyn
Mr. Jones, of Jamaica
Mrs. Jones, of Llanrhaidr
Mr. Jones, of Poolpark
Rev. Mr. Jal, of Plas yn Jal

L.

L.

Right Honourable the Marquis of Lindsey
Rev. Robert Lamb, L. L. D. Vicar of Ha-
ther, Lincolnshire

Rev. Mr. Lloyd, of Keven

Thomas Lewis, Register of St. Asaph, Esq;

John Lloyd, of Ragat, Esq;

Foulk Lloyd, of Brynlllyarth, Esq;

John Lloyd, of Peterwell, Esq; Counsellor
at Law

Ellis Lloyd, of Tyddin, Esq;

Edward Lloyd, of Tyddin, Esq;

Rev. Mr. Lloyd, Rector of Llanvorock

Rev. Mr. Lloyd, Vicar of Mold

Maurice Lewis, of Beaumares, Esq;

Mr. Lloyd, of the India House.

M.

Sir Thomas Mostyn, of Mostyn, Bart.

John Mostyn, of Segroid, Esq;

Owen Meuricke, of Bodorgan, Esq;

Rev. Mr. Middleton, Rector of Melton,
Leicestershire.

William Middleton, of Denbigh, Esq,

Mrs. Middleton, of Llanryth

the SUBSCRIBERS.

xiii

O

Rev. Mr. Owen, Chaplain to his Grace the Duke of Ancaſter

Rev. Mr. Owen, Rector of Aberfraw

Mr. Owen, Attorney in Mold †

P.

William Price, of Vaenol Eſq; †

Robert Price, of Bathavarn, Eſq;

Thomas Price, M. D. of Rhiwlas

Mr. Henry Parry, of Caernarvon

John Painter, of Summer Hill, Eſq;

Thomas Pryſe of Gogerdhan, Eſq;

Walter Pryſe, Eſq;

R.

Edward Roberts, of Cheſter, Eſq;

Thomas Rowlands, of Caere, Eſq;

Humphrey Roberts, of Bryn y neuadd, Eſq;

Samuel Reynardſon, of Holywell, Lincolnſhire, Eſq;

Eubule Roberts, of Llanryth, Eſq;

S.

George Shakerley, of Gwerfyllt, Eſq;

Peter Shakerley, of Cheſter, Eſq;

Edward

A LIST of

Edward Sulyard, of Hawley Park, Suffolk,
Esq;

William Swymmer, of Beeks, Gloucester-
shire, *Esq;*

Rev. William Stukely, M. D. Rector of
All-Saints, Stamford.

Mrs. Salisbury, of Bachymbid

Mr. Seal, of Aldersgate, London

T.

Right Honourable Lord Viscount Tyrconnel

Thomas Trollop, of Bourn, Lincolnshire,
Esq;

Edward Thelwal, of Llanbeder, *Esq;*

David Thomas, of Pwillywrach, Glamor-
ganshire, *Esq;*

U.

William Vaughan, of Corfy Gedol, *Esq;* †

Rev. Mr. Vaughan, Rector of Guilsfield,
Montgomeryshire

Mr. Vaughan, of Croise.

W.

Sir Robert Williams, of Marle, Bart.

Sir

the SUBSCRIBERS.

XV

Sir Watkin Williams Wynne, *of Winstay, Bart.*

John Wright, *of Plasfysfa, Esq;*

Robert Wynne, *of Bodysgallen, Esq; †*

Robert Wynne, *L. L. D. Chancellor of Hereford*

John Wynne, *of Glynllivon, Esq;*

John Wynne, *of Gop, Esq;*

Watkin Wynne, *of Voelas, Esq;*

Thomas Wynne, *of Llhwynegrin, Esq;*

Robert Williams, *of Pwll y Crochan, Esq;*

Aquilla Wyche, *of Marchwiel Esq;*

Rev. Mr. Wynne, Rector of Llanrust

Rev. Mr. Wynne, A. M. Rector of Llanymynech

Rev. Mr. Wynne, A. M. Rector of Kerig y Druidion, and Vicar of Hope

Rev. Mr. Wynne, A. M. Rector of Llanvechan.

Rev. Mr. Williams, of Pabo †

Rev. Mr. Williams, Vicar of Caernarvon

Hugh Williams, of Chester, Esq;

Mrs. White, of Beaumares

Mr. Wilson, of Covent-Garden, London

To be continued in the next Volume.

THE

the SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr. William Wynne, of Wigan.

Barr.

John Wright, of Tisbury, Esq.

Robert Wynne, of Bodysall, Esq.

Robert Wynne, Esq. D. D. Chancellor of

Hereford.

John Wynne, of Glyndon, Esq.

John Wynne, of Gop, Esq.

Watkin Wynne, of Vosses, Esq.

Thomas Wynne, of Llanwysted, Esq.

Robert Williams, of Rhydydd, Esq.

Adams Wych, of Marchwiel, Esq.

Rev. Mr. Wynne, Rector of Llanarth.

Rev. Mr. Wynne, A. M. Rector of Llan-

ymonach.

Rev. Mr. Wynne, A. M. Rector of Kely-

y Division, and Vicar of Hope.

Rev. Mr. Wynne, A. M. Rector of Llan-

chan.

Rev. Mr. Williams, of Pabod.

Rev. Mr. Williams, Vicar of Cwmbrim.

Hugh Williams, of Cheltenham, Esq.

Mrs. Wm. of Beaumont.

Mrs. Wilson, of Covent Garden, London.

To be continued in the next Volume.

THE

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC

INSULARUM
BRITANNICARUM
FACIES ANTIQUA.

OCEANUS

GERMANICUS

HIBERNICUM

MARRIAGE

2 UOI W A M

MORINI



INTRODUCTION.

BEFORE we enter upon the following History, it may not be improper to enquire into the Name and Origin of that ancient and valiant People called *Britons*, and that the rather, because there is a great Disagreement among Authors, concerning its Etymology or Signification. Some led by the similitude of Names, derive it from *Britannus*, who reigned in *Gaul*; others from *Brito* the Centaur. Some derive it from the *Celtic* or *British* Word *Brith*, which signifies painted, and that because the Ancient *Britons* used to paint their Bodies.

INTRODUCTION.

SOME again who seem to be nearest the Truth, deduce it from *Brutus*, the supposed Founder of the *British* Monarchy. And for the Support of this Opinion, they tell us, that one *Brutus* of *Trojan* Extraction, did some Centuries, after its first planting, with a considerable Number of select *Trojans*, invade this Island, and proving too strong for its original Inhabitants, who were of a gigantic Race, forced them to quit their ancient Habitations, and withdraw towards the West, where their Posterity remain at this Day.

UPON this Success, *Brutus* seized on the greatest Part of the Island, which had been till then called *Albion*, gave it the Name of *Britain*, and his brave Companions, *Britons* *.

Now

* It was usual in those early Days for the first Planters of Kingdoms, to give their Names to their New Territories.

INTRODUCTION.

3 *

Now this Tradition must be allowed to have a good share of probability, since it is universally acknowledged by those who have gone farthest in searching the Antiquity and Origin of Nations, that this Island was at first peopled by the warlike *Celts* or *Gauls*, descended from *Gomer* the eldest Son of *Japhet*; and accordingly we find them giving us an exact Account of their Migrations into *Europe* from the Place of their Dispersion.

THAT, from the Provinces of the *Upper Asia*, they came into the Countries bordering on the Lake *Mæotis*, on the North-side of the *Euxine* Sea; and as they were called *Cimmerians* in *Asia*, so they communicated their Name to that famous Streight, which has been since called *Cimbrian* or *Cimmerian Bosphorus*. Here they had not continued long before the increase of their Progeny, made it necessary to penetrate further into the Country, and as it is supposed, fell down the *Danube*, along whose Banks they pitched their Tents, (as

b 2

their

INTRODUCTION.

their manner of Life was) for the Convenience of their Cattle, and so shaping their Course Westward, entered *Germany*, from whence they advanced into *France*, for the Inhabitants of *France*, (as *Josephus* tells us) were anciently called *Gomarites*, as being the Descendants of *Gomer*; and that from *France*, they came at length into the South part of this Island, and therefore we find, that the *Welsh*, the ancient Proprietors of *Britain*, call themselves *Gomry* or *Kymry*, and their Language *Gomraeg*, which Words bear so great an Analogy with the Original Appellation, from whence they are derived, that we may reasonably conclude, the true Ancient Britons, or *Welsh*, to be the genuine Descendants of *Gomer*, the eldest Son of *Japhet*; but this will be further evinced from the Affinity between the *Celts* or *Gauls*, and the ancient Britons, with respect to Religion, Language, Laws and Customs.

Their Character.

THE Ancient Britons, or *Kymry*, were a brave and warlike People, hardy and active; in most things, we are told, they resembled

ve-
eir
om
the
(as)
ing
om
uth
nd,
of
ry,
rds
gi-
de-
de,
be
the
ur-
the
ms,
ws
to
ere
ac-
re-
led



St. Michael, Patron of Soldiers



An Antient Briton or Hymero Paro. J. del.

INTRODUCTION.

5

sembled their Neighbours the *Gauls*, only ^{Their Character.} they had a more spritely Vigour of Mind and surpassed them, as *Tacitus* observed, in Penetration. They were endued with more Sincerity and Generosity, than politer Nations, for *Diodorus Siculus* does not scruple to prefer their Integrity to that of the *Romans*. They were so much addicted to War, that they neglected the Encouragement of Trade and Navigation. For no sooner did the Trumpets sound, but the Nobility and People from every Quarter with equal Ardour, run to Arms. So great was their thirst for Glory and Conquest, that they looked upon it as a Disgrace to die in their Beds, and a great Honour to fall in Defence of their Lives and Liberties. And this made them behave with undaunted Bravery in the Face of the Enemy; void of Fear, even in the midst of Danger.

THEY were jealous Defenders of their Rights and Liberties, and always in a Disposition to maintain them. As to their Bodies, they were generally tall and well

made, and their Constitution so strong and good, that as *Plutarch* informs us, many of them arrived to their hundred and twentieth Year. This length of Days was probably owing to their plain and laborious way of living, to their Diversions and Exercises, such as wrestling, running, pitching the Bar, and the like robust and manly Diversions, which rendered them strong and healthy, stout and active. The Women were fair and handsome and well shaped, they seldom or ever went abroad without Vails or Hoods.

Customs.

THE Customs of the Ancient *Britons* were much the same with those of the *Celts* or *Gauls*. They were like them famed for their Chariots armed with Scythes, which they managed with a peculiar dexterity. They used, besides Bows and Arrows, Javelins or Lances, and a kind of offensive Weapons made of Brass or Copper, called Sling-Hatchets, of which there are many found in *Wales*, and one I have in my Possession. They wore Daggers hanging from a Belt, they had likewise Targets and Head-pieces.

And

INTRODUCTION.

7*

And to render them bold and warlike, they had their Bards to sing the Praises of those that signalized themselves in heroic Strain, at the Head of their Armies, at their Games, and other Solemnities. The musical Instruments employed by them on these Occasions were the Harp, Krûth, and Flute. They had several Cities, Towns, and Forts, the Names of which have been convey'd to us in their original Appellative; so that however small and mean the Huts of those rude wild People were, who lived in the Woods and Fields, and whose Occupation lay in hunting and killing wild or tame Beasts, and cloathing themselves with the Skins of them; yet we are assured, they had several considerable Cities*; and

b 4

that

* *Caius, Vitus*, and others, have given us the Names of twenty-eight Cities of *Britain*, and are as follows,

Kaer Effrog, i. e. *York*

Kaer Keint, *Canterbury*.

Kaer Greu, an ancient City in the North.

Kaer Werthevin, another in the North.

Kaer Wynt, *Winchester*.

INTRODUCTION.

that many of them wore Garments, and other Ornaments, such as Gold Rings and Chains about their Necks. *Diodorus Siculus* takes upon him to describe certain Garments of theirs called *Braccæ*, perhaps *Lhoundur*, viz. Trousers of divers Colours, such

-
- Kaer Glouc, Gloucester.*
 - Kaer Leidgoir, Lincoln.*
 - Kaer Cleon, Ar Usk.*
 - Kaer Lleon Kaur, Chester*, supposed to have been first built by a Giant.
 - Kaer Lunden, London.*
 - Kaerperis, Portchester.*
 - Kaer Conan, Connisborough in Yorkshire.*
 - Kaer ceri, Cirencester.*
 - Kaer Badbon, Bath.*
 - Kaer Iele, Carlisle.*
 - Kaer Paladyr, Shaftsbury, and Kaer Septun.*
 - Kaer Britbrch, Bristow.*
 - Kaer Sein, Segontium near Caernarvon.*
 - Kaer Myrdyn, Caermarthen, Muridunum.*
 - Kaerguit, Warwick.*
 - Kaer Alkwyd, Dunbriton.*
 - Kaer Vevenbyr.*
 - Kaercei, Chichester.*
 - Kaer Segen, Sylcester.*
 - Kaer Guortigern.*
 - Kaer Esk, Exceter, or Kaer Hwylcoel.*
 - Kaer Guitbelin, Watlingcester.*
 - Kaermegued, and Kaer Adanau.*

INTRODUCTION.

9

such as is yet used in some Parts of *Germany*, and the *Highlands* of *Scotland* * *Strabo* and *Marbal* make mention of other *British* Habits; *Solinus* likewise seems to mean the same thing, when speaking of their painting and staining their Bodies with the Juice of Woad, delineating upon them the Figures of the Sun and Moon, Trees and Flowers, and several sorts of Animals; he says, these were esteemed such Ornaments by them, that at their publick Feasts and Sacrifices they would expose them to the View of the Company. And again *Pliny* relates, that the *Britons* at some Sacrifices were wont to go naked; from which one may reasonably infer, that at other Times they went not so.

THERE is one Custom unjustly attributed to them, *viz.* a sort of Community of Wives, ten and twelve had Wives, says *Cæsar*, in common among them. But how such an unclean and unnatural Custom should

* *Person* says, the *Gauls* first brought this Sort of Garment out of *Asia* into *Europe*.

INTRODUCTION.

should spring up in this Island, when none of the Nations on the Continent from whence they were originally derived, are charged with, is not easy to conceive; especially since 'tis allowed they did retain the Religion, Manners and Customs of the People from whence they sprung in other Respects; besides such an uncleanly way of living was altogether incompatible with those strict Rules of Morality they had amongst them, and which were daily inculcated to them by those ancient Philosophers the Druids. We may add, that *Cæsar's* stay in *Britain* was so short, and his Knowledge of the Country so defective, that he had no Opportunity of conversing with the Inland Britons, whom he owns to be the ancient Inhabitants. So it is very probable, that this eminent Writer conjectured this from the smallness of their Houses, and their standing in clusters within the compass of a Square or Court, which contained each Tribe or Family, and were anciently called *Bôs*. And therefore every impartial Reader will conclude that these Stories came from Enemies, who not only invaded, but also plundered their

INTRODUCTION.

II

their Country, and consequently do not deserve all that Credit which has been given them.

Thus *Strabo* makes no scruple to call them barbarous, because they had not the Art of making any sort of Cheese, till the *Romans* came amongst them; but it is hardly to be supposed that those who traded with the *Phœnicians* to be ignorant of so common an Art, and especially in a Country abounding with numerous Herds. However that be, they are affirmed by *Pliny* to have applied themselves to Agriculture, and to have manured their Ground with Marl, instead of Dung, which plainly shews no such Ignorance in Husbandry, as others charge them with; yet it must be owned, that they had some barbarous Customs, such as their human Sacrifices, and other Rites of Religious Cruelty, used in Aruspicy and Divination. As to their Burials, they used to carry the Body of the Deceased to a Funeral Pile, which they set on fire, and when the Corps was burnt, they gathered up the Ashes, and put them into an Urn, which was

was repositied in a Sepulchral Monument,
or Barrow.

Religion.

As to their Religion, it was much the same with that of the *Celtes* or *Gauls*, whom they did not fall short of in Superstition. They worshipped the same Deities, as *Jupiter*, under the Name of *Taranis*, which in the *Celtick* or *British*, signifies Thunder, * but their principal Deities were *Mars* and *Mercury*. *Mars*, i. e. *Mawr-rwyf*, was the favourite Deity of the warlike; and *Mercury*, i. e. *Marcwr* of Merchants and Travellers, hence he was called *Duw-raith Andraffe* or *Andate*, is also counted among the *British* Deities, whose Worship they performed with the inhuman Sacrifices of their Captives. This was the Goddess of Victory, and was held in great Veneration by the *Britons*; for in that Success, which our famous *Boadicea* had over the *Romans*, we find that the *Britons*

* *Pexron* says, that these false and pretended Deities were originally powerful and warlike Princes, who ruled over the *Celtes* or *Gauls*.
p. 62.

INTRODUCTION.

13

sons sacrificed the Captives in the Grove of *Andraſte*, or *Victoria*, i. e. *Duwies yr Awraith*. The Care and Direction of all Religious Matters, were under their Druids, who as we are told, had the Management of all Sacrifices, all religious Rites and Ceremonies. All the Arts and Sciences, Learning, Philosophy and Divinity were taught by them, and these they taught by Memory, for they committed no Part of their Theology, or Philosophy to writing. Their grand Doctrine was, that the Soul never died, but transmigrated after the Decease of one Body into another, which was a Doctrine of great Use, both to stir them up to Virtue, and to inspire them with Courage, and a Contempt of Death.

THE Places where they worshipped were situated in the midst of pleasant Groves of Oak, for without that Tree they never celebrated any part of their sacred Functions; they placed a very high Mystery in every Branch and Sprig of it, especially the Mistletoe that grows on it, was looked upon as a most sacred thing, and al-

ways cut down with great Solemnity by a Druid in a white Garment, with a golden Sickle or pruning Knife, on their Grand Festival, the 10th of March.

2

P L I N T tells us, the Druids called it in their Language by a Word, signifying All Heal; but it is most likely they called it, as they still call it in some Parts of *Wales*, *y Uchelwydb* or *Pren-Awyr*.

Advifcum Druidæ, Druidæ Cantare Solebant.

OVID,

THESE Groves* where they worshipped were large and sumptuous, inclosed with spreading Oaks, from whence they were called *Lblyn*, and hence probably came

* This Custom began very early, for thus speaks God, *Thou shalt not plant a Grove of any Trees near the Altars.* Deut. xvi. 21. We find also the Heathens about *Syria* and *Palestine* to have retained Veneration for them. For when false Notions crept in among the Jews they forsook the Law of their God, and sacrificed on the Tops of Mountains and burnt Incense under Oaks. Hosea iv. 13.



The Chief Druid



The Chief of the

INTRODUCTION.

15*

came the Word *Lban*, which the Christians afterwards apply'd to their consecrated Places. Within these Groves were Mounts called *Gorseddau*, where they sat, and pronounced their Decrees, and spoke Orations to the People. Some of these Mounts were made square, and some round, and are to be seen in many Places in *Wales* at this Day. They had in them their Heaps, or *Garnedd*, consisting of Stones of all Sorts, from one Pound to an hundred; they were round in Form, and somewhat tapering, like a Pyramid with a flat Stone on the Top; some of these flat Stones are still entire, and are nine foot long and five broad, as that on the Top of the Carn, called *Crigy Deryn* in *Caermarthenshire*.

ON these Carns, the Druids made their Anniversary Fires on *May Eve*, *Midsummer*, and the last of *October*. And these Fires and Sacrifices were to obtain a Blessing on the Fruits of the Earth; as those on the 1st of *May*, that they might prosperously grow, they being then in their Verdancy. Those on *Midsummer*, they becoming

becoming ready for gathering; and those on the last of *October*, were a Thanksgiving for finishing their Harvests. These last are still continued in *Wales*, without knowing why, but that they found it the Custom of their Ancestors. Within the said Groves were likewise Altars called *Cromlech*, on which they performed the Solemnities of Sacrifices, and their sacred Rites of Divination and Augury. There are many of these Altars to be seen still in *Wales*, particularly two in *Cerrig y Druidion* Parish in *Denbighshire*, and one at *Bodowyr* in *Anglesey*. The huge Stones which appear in these Altars, and those of the Temples, leave us no room, to doubt that those who erected them were skilled in the mechanical Powers and Engines.

AMONG these *Druids* there were four Degrees of Priests, *Euvates* or *Vaids*, ordinary Priests or *Phisiologers*, and an *Arch-Druid*, who had a supreme metropolitical Power, not only over their own Communities, but also over all Governments; for they decided all Controversies of Law and Equity, and distributed all Rewards

INTRODUCTION.

17

Rewards and Punishments. Terrible were the Effects of their Excommunication on any one that did refuse to submit to their Decrees and Sentence: Not only to the excluding the inferior Laity from the Rights and Privileges of Sacrifice; but also to the dethroning of the Princes who shewed them the least Disregard, and often devoting them to Ruin and Destruction.

AND as there were several Kinds of Degrees among the *Druids*, so were there also among the *Bards* *. They were divided into three Orders or Degrees, namely *Prududd*, *Teuluur*, and *Klerwr*, or *Privardd*, *Pofwardd*, and *Arwyddwardd*. These three Kinds had three different Matters to treat of: *Prududd* or *Privardd*, were Chronologers, and were looked upon to be Prophets as well as Poets. *Teuluur* or *Pofwardd*, recorded all the Exploits of
c their

* They made Hymns for the Use of the Temples, and had the Management of their Musick.

their Heroes, and sung them in well-made Compositions on their Harps. The third sort *Klerwr* or *Arwyddvardh*, were Ensign Bards, or Heralds at Arms, whose Business was likewise to declare the Genealogy, and to blazon the Arms of Princes and Nobles, and to keep them on record. There was another called *Bardd y Telyn*, who had his Abode in the King's Palace, and was chief Musician of the Harp. These two last always attended their Kings in all Battles and Exploits.

It may not be improper to insert here a small Specimen of the Sorts of Verse used by the Bards to instruct their Pupils, which they were obliged to learn by heart; and which generally concluded with some Divine or Moral Doctrine. Of this kind are the following antient Epigrams called *Englynion yr Eiry*.

Eiry Mynnydh gwyn pôb ty
Kynnevin brân a chany
Ni ddaw da o Dra Chysgy

Eiry

Eiry mynnydh gwynt ae tawl

Llydan Lloergan glas tavawl

O Dyd dyn diried di bawl

Eiry Mynnydh bydb ym, mron

Gochuiban quint, yuch blaen on,

Trydyth troed y ben y fon.

By these three they seem to invoke the Mountains of *Snowdon*, called *Eyryri*, as the Greeks did *Parnassus*, and the Cretans Mount *Ida*; for *Gildas* plainly tells us, that the antient Britons had an extraordinary Veneration for Mountains and Rivers.

As to their Language it was the same *Language*. with the *Gauls*; for we read that the *Celts* or *Gauls*, used to come frequently to be instructed here by the *British Druids*, which they would not probably have done, unless by mutual Communication they had understood each other. But as this has been sufficiently proved by the learned *Pezron*, our ingenious Countryman Mr. *Lbuid*, and several other Antiquarians; so it would be unnecessary to trouble the Reader with any thing more on this Article,

than this one Observation, That the *Celtic* or *Gaulish* Tongue, which we call *Kymraeg*, and which is still preserved among us, is one of the most antient and least corrupted Language in this Western Part of the World. It has a great many Marks of the original Simplicity of the *Hebrew*, and a great Number of Words are found therein exactly agreeing with it; but this Likeness is still more apparent, when modulated and sweeten'd by the *Bards*, who render it soft, musical and harmonious.

Government.

As to their Government, it was like that of the *Gauls*, the *Isle* of *Britain* was parcel'd out into several petty States, or Kingdoms, whose Princes exercised Sovereign Authority in their Dominions; yet in Matters of great Moment, they submitted their Powers to the Conduct of one general Sovereign, or Monarch, whom they called *Brenin Prydyn Olh*, i. e. King of all *Britain*, whose Election to that great Dignity, was by the Consent of the inferior Kings and Princes, and they always confined themselves in their Choice to the
rightful

INTRODUCTION.

21 *

rightful Line, and to the Series of Kings which descended from the famous *Dunwallo Moelmutius*, *Br. Dyfnwal Moelmud*. And though this Form of Government was maintained even under the *Romans*; for *Canobeline*, *Arviragus Lucius* and *Coel*, are mention'd by the Title of Kings of *Great Britain*; yet the same Law and Government was used in every Prince or King's Territories, as was in the supreme King's; and every King had always a chief Judge residing in his Court, whose Business was to decide all Controversies, and to settle all private Differences, he was called *Egnat Llys*, and was one of the *tri Anhebbkor Brenin*. It is true while the *Druids* continued in the Island, they bore the greatest Sway in the Administration, all Matters of Consequence were canvassed and determin'd by them, as was before remark'd. Notwithstanding this, we find the King had always a civil Judge to attend him, and one of the chief Lords to consult with upon all Emergencies.

INTRODUCTION.

HE had a Bard to celebrate the Praises of his Ancestors, a Chronicler to register his own Actions, a Physician to take Care of his Health, and a Musician to entertain him. These were obliged to be always present, and to attend the King whithersoever he went. Besides these, there were a certain Number of Heroic Men called *Mikwyr*, who attended him, when he went on his Progress, or marched out with his Army, and were resolved to stand by him, even at the Expence of their Lives,

It will not be amiss here to take a View of the several Ranks and Degrees of Men among the *Britons*, a thing so necessary, that without it, there is no having a distinct Knowledge of their Government.

THE *Tyvyfoc*, or Duke, was next in degree to the *Brenin* or King, and therefore was vested with great Power, especially in Time of War. The third Degree was styled

INTRODUCTION.

23 *

stiled *Jarl* or *Ealdur*, i. e. Earl or Elder. These were Persons of great Distinction, discharged the highest Offices, and presided in all Courts of Judicature. The fourth was stiled *Arglwydd*, i. e. Lord, this Title came afterwards to be expressed by the Term Consul. The fifth was *Barwn*, i. e. Baron. Both these held their Estates in Fee by attending on their Sovereign Prince, and had Trusts and Offices both Civil and Military conferr'd upon them. The sixth Order was that of *Breir* or *Uchelwyr*. These were such as lived on their own Estates, and may be called the Esquires; they had the Right of sitting in Courts of Judicature, and of assisting in passing of judicial Degrees and Sentences. The seventh was that of *Gwreange*, i. e. a Yeoman, or Farmer. The eighth was *Alttud*, and next to that a *Kaeth*, which was the lowest Order of Men, and stiled Slaves. These were the Property of their Lords and Princes, and as such were used as they thought fit. These nine Degrees had three several Tenures of Lands, as *Maerdir*, *Uchelordir*, and *Priodordir*.

INTRODUCTION.

There were moreover several other Names and Degrees, which were acquired by Birth, Office, and Dignity, but they were all comprehended under the aforementioned Degrees,

HAVING thus spoken of the several Orders and Degrees of Men among the Britons, let us now proceed to their Laws.

THE first Laws we have any Knowledge of, are those enacted by the famous *Dunwallo Moelmutius*, or *Dysfrwal Moelmad*, which were soon after enlarged by Queen *Martia*, and served, as we are told, for the Basis to those published by the *Anglo-Saxon Kings*.

SUCH as are most material, or deserve notice in this place, are as follow, Their Laws relating to the Lands; *Dysfrwal Moelmad* divided all the Country into Erws or Acres, and appointed four Erw or Acre to make a Tyddin or Messuage, and four of that Tyddin or Messuage to make a Rhandir, and four of those Rhandiredel to make

INTRODUCTION.

25 *

make a Gavel or Tenement, and four Gavel to make a Trev or Township, and four Trev or Townships, to make a Maenol or Maenor, and twelve Maenol or Maenor, and Dwy Dre, or two Townships, make a Kwmwd or Comot, and two Kwmwd make a Kantred or a hundred Townships. By this Division each Tyddin contained four Erw, each Rhandir sixteen, and each Gavel sixty four Erw; every Town or Township contained two hundred fifty six Erw or Acres; these Erws were fertile arable Land, for no other Land was measured, and Meadows or Pastures, and Woods were termed Wastes; every Maenol contained four of these Townships, and every Kwmwd or Comot fifty, and every Kantred or Cantreus a hundred, as the Word imports. And all the Countries and Lord's Dominions were divided by Kantreds, and to each was given some proper Name. Gulad or Country was the Dominion of one Lord or Prince, consisting of two or three Kantreds, some more, some less, having each a separate Court, or Jurisdiction; to the End Justice might be

be administred with less Expence and quicker Dispatch. These several Divisions and Subdivisions were all of them bound to the King, or under him to their immediate Lord, or chief Proprietor, by certain Ties and Conditions, such as Rents, Services, Duties, Mulcts and Attendances. It would be too long a Digression from my Design to give a distinct Account of all these Ties and Conditions, and therefore shall only observe, That nothing could more prudently be contrived, than this Division of the Country, since it was the only Method, that could in those early Days enable the King's Protection, and secure the People's Loyalty and Subjection.

WHEN Causes of very great Consequence were to be tried, such as Title of Lands, they were determined and adjudg'd by the King in Person, or by his special Deputy. With the King came his chief Judge, and citing together the Uchelwyr of that Comot, the ordinary Judge of the Country where the Land lay, together with two Elders of his Council and the Priest.

INTRODUCTION.

27 *

Priest. The Method of their proceeding was in the following manner. After having viewed the Land, they caused a round or square Mount to be cast up, which was called *Gorsfedde-dadle*, that is, the Mount of Pleadings, and upon which the judicial Seat was placed, in the open Air, with their Backs to the Sun and the Weather. The King sat above the rest of the Court, with an Elder on each Side, next to whom were the *Uchelwyr* on both Sides *. At a small Distance below the King, sat the chief Judge, with the Priest on his Right Hand, and the Country Judge on his Left. This Court of Judicature being thus assembled, the Plaintiff, with his Advocate, Champion, and *Rhyngylh* or Serjeant, stood on the left Side of the Court, as did the Defendant in like manner on the Right. And lastly, the Witnesses on both Sides appeared, and stood at the lower
End

* *Uchelwyr*, They were so called from the Privilege of sitting higher than other Freeholders or Tenants in their Courts of Judicature.

End of the Court, directly opposite to the chief Judge, to testify the best of their Knowledge in the Matter in Debate. After taking the Depositions of the Witnesses, and hearing the Merits of the Cause, upon notice given by the Rhingylh or Serjeant, the chief Judge, the Priest, and the Country Judge withdrew themselves to consider and consult; and then, *Secundum allegata & probata*, brought in their Verdict. Whereupon the King, after Consultation held with the Elders that sat next him, pronounced the definitive Sentence, except the Cause was so doubtful as to render it impossible to know the Truth of it; and then the two Champions determined the Dispute by single Combat.

IT was not lawful to erect these Courts for Title of Lands, but upon the Lands that were in Controversy *.

IT

* That antient and celebrated Poet *Taliesin* mentions these *Gorsedde*, or *Tribunals*
Panfo

It was not lawful to mortgage or alienate their Lands, but to one of the same Family or Kindred.

MOST Offences were punished by Mulcts and Fines. And all such as had reason to fear Oppression and Violence, had the Liberty to betake themselves to the Cities of Refuge, and the Temples of the Gods, which were made Sanctuaries. And it was enacted, that the Ways that led to those Temples and Cities, should enjoy the same Privilege, as also the Husbandmen's Ploughs.

To these we might add many more; but what has been already delivered, may be sufficient to give the Reader a just Idea of the Form and Model of our ancient *British* Administration.

IT

Pan fo tri Brenin
Ar Gorsedd y, (Bryn) gwyn
Gwynfydd y Rbian.

(*Bryn*) signifying, a Heap or Pile, and not Supreme or Royal, as Mr. Rowland conjectures.

IT is now time to proceed to the History of the *British* Kings.

The Reigns of the Kings of Britain.

ALBION or *Britain*, must in all probability have been governed by Kings long before the Reign of *Brutus*; for as it was first planted by some Colonies of the *Celtes* or *Gauls*, so was it governed by those on the Continent, and by the neighbouring Provinces, who assisted in making Settlements here. Some glimpse of this Truth have reached our Times, for ancient Writers mention the Names of several Kings of the *Celtes*, who reigned in *Gaul*, and over the *Gymry* in this Island*.

And

* The following is a List of Kings who reigned in *Gaul*, and over the *Cymbri* or *Kymry*, in this Island before *Brutus*, as we find them mentioned by *Berosus*, *Vitus*, and others. 1. *Samothès* or *Dis*, 2. *Magus*, 3. *Sarton*, 4. *Druys*, 5. *Ba-*

INTRODUCTION.

31

And we may suppose that these Original Inhabitants gave this Island the ancient Name of *Albion*, since it signifies White in their Language, for the Hills on the Shore near *Dover* appear white to those who approach this Island from the Continent. And hence probably came our Poets to call it *Inis-wen* that is the *White Island*.

HOWEVER that be, the Island in process of Time changed its Name for that of *Britain*, from *Brutus* or *Brotus*, who they say was the Son of *Sylvius*, and Grandson of *Ascanius*, who obtained the Sovereignty of this Isle, in the Year of the World 2859, before *Christ* 1100. I shall here exhibit a List of the *British* Kings, as low down as *Caswallaun* or *Cassivelaunus*, and the Years they are said to have reigned.

The

-
5. *Bardus*, 6. *Longus*, 7. *Lucus*, 8. *Celtes*,
 9. *Galates*, 10. *Narbon*, 11. *Lugdus*, 12. *Bel-*
gius, 13. *Jafius*, 14. *Allobrox*, 15. *Ægyptus*,
 16. *Parys*, 17. *Olbius*, 18. *Galates* 2d. 19. *Nam-*
nes, 20. *Franicus*.

INTRODUCTION

<i>The Ancient Kings of Britain</i>	
<i>Ann. Mundi</i>	<i>Reign'd Years</i>
2859 Brutus, the founder	15
2874 Locrine	20
2894 Guendolen, Wife of Locrine	15
2909 Maddan, Son of Locrine	40
2949 Mempricius or Mymbyr	20
2969 Ebraucus, or Effroc	40
3009 Brutus Darianlas	12
3012 Leil, or Ucon	25
3046 Rhun Hudibras, or rather Rhun- baladrbras	39
3085 Bladud, or Bleuddyd	20
3105 Leir, or Lyr	40
3155 Cordeilla	5
3170 Cunedagius and Morgan, or Ge- nedawc and Morgan	33
3203 Rivallo, or Rhywallon	46
3249 Gurgustius, or Gwrgust	37
3287 Sifillius, or Syrsylht	49
3336 Jacobus, or Jago	28
3364 Kynmarchus, or Cynfarch	54
3418 Gorbogudo, or Gorbodug	63
3476 Ferrex and Porrex	4

ON the Death of *Ferrex* and *Porrex*
the Kingdom was rent into *Factions*, and
divided

INTRODUCTION.

33 *

divided under the Power of the five following Kings, each making Parties to support their Pretensions to the Sovereignty.

Rudacus, *or* Rhydwl King of Cambriæ

Cloten, *King of* Cornwall

Pinnor, *or* Ymner, *King of* Loegriæ

Staterius, *King of* Albanïæ

Owen, *King of* Berniciæ

Reign'd Years.

3529 Dunwallo Moelmutius, *or* Dyfnwal Moelmud, *Son of* Cloten 40

3574 Belinus *and* Brennus, *or* Beli *and* Bran 26

3596 Gurguntius Barbtruch, *or* Gwrgan Farfdrwch 19

3614 Guithelin 27

3650 Sifill, *or* Sytsylht 7

3657 Kimarus, *or* Kynfarch 3

3661 Danius, *or* Dan 8

3669 Morvid, *or* Morydd 8

3676 Gorbonian, *or* Gorddufu 10

3686 Arthgallo 1

3687 Heliodorus Puis, *or* Elidr *the Pious* 3

3690 Arthgallo *reinstated* 10

3700 Eliodrus Pius Elidr 1

VOL. I.

d

3701 Owen

INTRODUCTION.

Reign'd Years.

3701 Owen and Peredyr 8

3709 Heliodorus, or Elidr the Pious, re-
stored 4

AFTER him there were thirty three
Succession of Princes in the space of 185
Years.

Rhees, Son of Gorbonian, Morgan Son of
Arthgallo, Enneon, Idwallo Son of Owen,
Rhun Son of Eliedyr, Geraint Son of E-
lidyr, Gadellus or Cadell Son of Geraint,
Coel, Porrex, Cherin or Kerens, Ful-
genius, Eldad, Androgeus, Urianus, E-
liud, Cledaucus, Elydan, Gurguntius,
Merianus, Bleduno, Caphus, Owen, Si-
fill, Blegabred, Arthmael, Eldol, Redion,
Rothericus, Samuel Penissel, Pyrrhus,
Capoir, Gilquellus or Minogan.

Reign'd Years.

Heli, or Belimawr, i. e. Belin the
Great 40

3895 Lud, or Lludd, Son of Belimawr 11

3908 Cassivelaunus, or Caswallaun, Son
of Belimawr 15

In whose Reign the Romans invaded Bri-
tain, under the Conduct of Julius Cæsar.

THE



THE
HISTORY
OF THE
ANCIENT BRITONS.

BOOK I.



*B*RUTUS, or *Brotus* the Son of *Sylvius* having unfortunately killed his Father as he was shooting at a Deer, was forced to leave *Italy*, and retire into *Greece*. Here he found the Descendants of *Helenus*, the Son of *Priam*, kept in Captivity by *Pandrasus*

The HISTORY of

King of the *Græcians*. For after the Destruction of *Troy*, *Pyrrhus*, the Son of *Achilles*, in revenge of his Father's Death had brought thither *Helenus* among other Prisoners. *Brutus* finding to his Joy and Surprize, that they were originally from the same Stock with himself, took up his abode among them, and began to shew uncommon Marks of Courage and Conduct, which attracted the Hearts, both of Kings and Commanders, who considered him as a Person of distinguished Merit, and capable in Time of being very serviceable to them. He became so famous in *Greece*, on account of his Valour and Prudence, that the *Trojans*, not only conceived great Hopes of him, but also unanimously solicited him to put himself at their Head, in order to free them from the *Græcian* Bondage, alledging their Numbers, and the Ease wherewith they might accomplish the Enterprize. Adding withal, that there was then in *Greece* a Noble Youth, whose Name was *Assaracus*, descended from them by the Mother's Side, hearty in their Interest. For he was much dissatisfied with the *Greeks* for siding with his Brother

Brother, who had attempted to deprive him of certain Castles bequeathed him by his Father. *Brutus* having view'd the Number of his Men, and the Strength of *Affaracus's* Castles, readily embraced their Project. Accordingly having assembled the *Trojans*, as privately as he could, he put himself at the Head of them, and after fortifying the Towns belonging to *Affaracus*, withdrew to the Woods and Places of Security; where when they were all arrived, *Brutus* sends a Messenger to *Pandrasus* with a Letter to this Purpose.

“ That as it was a Disgrace to the illustrious Race of *Dardanus*, to live in a servile State, they betook themselves to the Woods, preferring a savage Life to Slavery. If his Majesty did dislike this, that then they should have free Leave to retire to some other Country, where they might enjoy their Liberty, and all their former Privileges.”

PANDRASUS was exceedingly surprized at this Message, and having summon'd a Council, he resolved to head his Forces in Person, and march in pursuit of

them. *Brutus* having Notice of his Approach, quitted the Woods and possessed himself of the Town, called *Sparatinum*, from whence he sallied out at the Head of three thousand Men, and falling suddenly and unexpectedly on the *Græcian* Army, put them into great Disorder. The *Trojans* pursuing their Advantage, made a great Slaughter of them, as they endeavoured to cross the River *Acheron*; and notwithstanding the Valour of *Antigonus*, Brother to *Pandrasus*, who used his utmost Endeavours to rally his Troops, and renew the Fight, they were put to the rout, and himself with his Companion *Anacletes*, taken Prisoners. This Victory obtained, and a sufficient Number of Forces left to guard the Town, *Brutus* returned with his Prisoners to the Woods. In the mean time *Pandrasus* being extreamly concerned and uneasy, both at his own ignominious Flight and his Brother's Captivity, resolved to make another Attempt. For this Purpose, he assembled the Remains of his scattered Army the same Night, and early next Morning invested the Town, imagining that *Brutus* had after the Battle retired thither

ther with his Prisoners. While the Siege was carrying on, the *Trojans* found means to send a Messenger to acquaint *Brutus* with their Danger, pressing him to hasten to their Assistance. As *Brutus* had not a sufficient Force with him to engage the Enemy, he bethought himself of a Method of extricating them from the Danger; he called to him *Anacletus*, and told him that having determined to surprize the *Græcian* Camp, he enjoin'd him, as he tendered his own Life, and the Life of his Friend *Antigonus*, to oblige himself by Oath, to go at an appointed Time to the Camp, and tell the Guards, that he had brought *Antigonus* out of Prison, and had led him to the Skirts of the Wood, where he lay concealed among the Bushes, being unable to get any farther by reason of the weight of Chains wherewith he is bound; earnestly intreating them to come with all Expedition to his Assistance. *Anacletus* being under great Apprehensions for his own Life, made a solemn Promise, that on Condition he and his Friend *Antigonus* should have their Lives spared, he would faithfully execute what he commanded him.

The HISTORY of

This *Brutus* readily promised; pursuant to this Agreement, *Anacletus* set out for the *Græcian* Camp, and as he drew near it, the advanced Guards came out and met him. They at first had some suspicion of him, but being known, and telling his Tale with that subtilty, that he passed upon them for a Friend, and accordingly they left their Posts, and attended him to the Woods; but were not gone far before they saw themselves invested by *Brutus's* armed Bands, who, starting up from among the Shrubs and Bushes, fell upon them so furiously, that they made a dreadful Slaughter of them. From hence he marched directly to the Siege, and foreseeing both the Difficulty and Danger of his Enterprize, divided his Men into three Bodies, directing two of them to advance in Silence and good Order towards the Avenues, while he at the Head of the other surprized the King's Tent, and that none of them should do any Execution till the Signal should be given by Sound of Trumpet. Pursuant to this Scheme, they advanced in Silence towards the Camp, took their Posts, expecting the promised Signal; which was no sooner heard, than they fell upon

upon them, in the dark, Sword in hand, slew great Numbers of them, and filled the whole Camp with Terror and Confusion. The Besieged taking advantage of their Consternation, sallied out, and falling upon them before they could form their Ranks, made a dreadful Havock of them. *Brutus* in the mean while had surrounded the King's Tent, and made sure of his Prey, desired nothing more than to have the King in his Power, well knowing he could by preserving his Life better attain his Ends, than by destroying it.

THE next Morning the victorious General having taken and plundered the Enemy's Camp, brought his illustrious Captive into *Sparatinum*, which occasioned great Joy in the Army. After having caused the dead to be buried, and left a sufficient Number of Men to guard the Town, they returned to the Woods. Here *Brutus* summoned a Council, in order to deliberate what they should demand of the captive King. In this Council a great Debate arose among them; some were for settling in *Greece*, and having a certain Part of the King-

Kingdom assigned to them for their Habitation; others were for retiring to some other Country, and to be supply'd with all manner of Provisions for their Voyage. Among these latter was *Mempricius*, who after acquainting them with the dangerous Consequences that would necessarily ensue from their staying in *Greece*, advised them to demand, in the first place, the King's Daughter *Innogen* in Marriage to their General, with a great Portion; next Ships and necessary Provisions for their Voyage. *Brutus*, with all the rest, came over to the Opinion of *Mempricius*, and it was unanimously resolved, that *Pandrasus* should be brought forth and condemn'd to a most cruel Death, in case he would not yield to their Request. The King being introduced, and placed in a high Seat, is briefly told the Conditions he was to perform, upon pain of dying in the most exquisite Tortures that could be invented. The King seeing the absolute Necessity he was under of either consenting or forfeiting his own Life, soon yielded to their Demand, and told them withal, that as he knew *Brutus* was a Person of noble Ex-

traction,

raction, as well as great Courage, he would not only make good his Promise by giving him his Daughter in Marriage, but would likewise resign him the third Part of his Empire, if he thought fit to stay in Greece, if not, he would continue as a Hostage in their Hands, till he had made good his Promise. The Marriage Ceremonies being over, *Pandrasus* ordered a Fleet of three hundred and twenty four Ships to be immediately equipped, and loaded with all necessary Provisions. All things being now in readiness, *Brutus* took leave of his Father-in-law, and with his Wife *Innogen* embark'd; the leaving of her Parents, Relations, and native Country, bore very hard upon her; the Wind proving favourable they set sail, and in two Days and a Night they came to a certain Island called *Leogecia*, formerly a Haunt of the Pyrates, but then deserted.

BRUTUS sent a Party on Shore to make Discovery, who return'd loaded with Prey, and informed him of the State of the Island, soliciting him to go to a certain ruin'd City, where they found a Temple,

Temple, in which stood the Statue of *Diana*, to consult that Oracle concerning the Success of their Expedition, and their Place of Settlement. This Proposal was accepted, and accordingly *Brutus* set out for the Temple, accompanied with *Gerion*, the Sooth-sayer, and twelve Men venerable for their Age. Having performed the usual Ceremonies on their Arrival, *Brutus*, who stood at the Feet of the Statue, repeated the following Verses.

Diva potens nemorum, terror sylvestribus apris

Cui licet amfractus ire per Æthereos, Infernasque Domos; terrestria jura resorces,

Et dic quas terras nos habitare velis.

Dic certam sedem qua te venerabor in ævum,

Qua tibi Virgineis templa dicat Choris.

Englified by Mr. Thompson thus.

Goddeſs of Woods, tremendous in the Chace

To Mountain Boars, and all the ſavage Race.

Wide o'er th' Ætherial Walks extends
thy Sway
And o'er th' infernal Mansions void of
Day,
On thy third Realm look down! un-
fold our Fate,
And say what Region is our destin'd Seat?
Where shall we next thy lasting Tem-
ples raise,
And Choirs of Virgins celebrate thy
Praise.

WHEN *Brutus* had repeated these
Words nine times, he laid himself down
before the Altar, and fell fast asleep. A-
bout the third Hour of the Night, he be-
held in a Dream the Goddess uttering di-
stinctly the following Lines.

*Brute sub Occasum Solis trans Gallica
regna,*

Insula in Oceano est undique Clausa Mari.

*Insula in Oceano est habitata Gigantibus
olim,*

*Nunc deserta quidem; gentibus apta tuis
Hanc*

The HISTORY of

Hanc pete, namq; tibi sedes erit illa perennis;

Hic fiet natis altera Troja tuis,

Hic de prole tua reges nascentur; & ipse

Totius terræ subditus Orbis erit.

Brutus there lies beyond the Gallie
Bounds

An Island which the Western Sea fur
rounds,

By Giants once possess'd; now few re
main

To bar thy Entrance, or obstruct thy
Reign,

To reach that happy Shore thy Sails em
ploy:

There Fate decrees to raise a second Troy,

And found an Empire in thy Royal Line,

Which Time shall ne'er destroy, nor
Bounds confine.

PONTICUS VIRUNNIUS tells
us, that these Verses were originally in
Greek, and translated into *Latin* by that fa
mous *British* Poet *Gildas*.

BRU-

BRUTUS no sooner awak'd than he acquainted his Companions with what he had seen, and returned with Alacrity to their Ships. On this welcome Intelligence, they instantly set sail towards the West, and after many Adventures on the Coast of *Africa*, they arrived at a Place on the *Tyrrhenean*, or rather *Pyrrenean* Shore, where they happen'd to light on the Descendants of those *Trojans* who attended *Antenor* in his Flight: The Name of their Leader was *Corineus*, a Person of great Courage and Strength of Body, having joined these, they set sail without Loss of Time and came to anchor at the Mouth of the *Loire* in *Aquitain*.

HERE they spent about seven Days, in search of Provisions, and making the best Discovery they could of the Country.

GOFFARIUS PICTUS King of *Aquitain*, had quickly Intelligence of this, and could not conceive upon what Foundation they had enter'd his Kingdom; he

he therefore immediately dispatched Messengers to know their Errand. As they were on the Road towards the Fleet, they were met by *Corineus*, who was with a Party of Men a hunting; and being question'd, why he had enter'd the King's Forests, and kill'd his Game without Leave; answered, that there was no manner of Occasion to ask any leave. Hereupon one of them, nam'd *Imbertus*, stepped forward, and let fly an Arrow, aiming particularly at *Corineus*, which so enraged him, that he fell upon *Imbertus* and slew him; nor perhaps had any of them escaped his Fury, had they not betaken themselves to Flight. The Messengers on their Return to *Goffarius* complain'd heavily of their severe Treatment, and did not fail to excite him to revenge it. Accordingly he began to make the necessary Preparations for War; and when all things were ready he marched in Quest of the Enemy. *Brutus* in the mean time being inform'd of their March, assembled all his Forces, and leaving a sufficient Number to guard his Ships, advanced with his Army to give them

them Battle. Hereupon a bloody Engagement ensued, both Parties behaving with great Courage and Resolution. The Victory was a long time doubtful, but at last *Corineus*, advancing with great Fury at the Head of his Company, made so great a Slaughter of them with his Battle Axe, that the *Pictavians* betook themselves to flight.

ENCOURAG'D with this Success, *Brutus* and *Corineus* spread themselves all over *Aquitain*, and laid waste the whole Country. But being informed, at the same time, that *Goffarius* was making vast Preparations, having drawn all *Gaul* to his Aid, then govern'd by twelve Kings, they drew their Armies together again, and resolved to form a strong Encampment, to favour their Retreat in case of need. Soon after this the whole Nation appeared in a Body; and then *Corineus*, persuaded that they could not resist them with their few Forces, left *Brutus* to defend the Lines, got out with three thousand Men, and lay concealed in a neighbouring Wood; from
c
whence

The HISTORY *of*

whence they sally'd out in the Heat of Action, and fell upon the Enemy with great Fury. The *Gauls*, who had hitherto behaved with great Courage, no sooner perceived this Detachment attacking them in the Rear, than their Courage failing them at once, they betook themselves to flight. The *Trojans* pursued them with great Shouts, slew great Numbers of them, and dispersed the rest so effectually, that they gained, in the End, a compleat Victory.

IN this Action fell the brave *Turonus*, *Brutus's* Nephew, after having given great Proofs of his Valour and Strength, and hence the Place where he was buried acquired the Name of *Tours*, for that City, we are told, took its Rise at that time.

BRUTUS seeing himself now Master of the Field, and his Forces much diminished, thought it adviseable to set out in quest of the Island which the Oracle had told him of. Hereupon he set sail forthwith for the promised Land, loaded with

an immense Booty, and arrived at a Place where *Totnefs* now stands, in *Devonshire*.

THE Island, called then *Albion*, had been long possess'd by the *Gymri*, but their Number being not very considerable, they were overpowered with *Brutus's* numerous Forces, and obliged to retire some Northward and some Westward, leaving *Brutus* in full Possession of all the Southern Part of the Island. After he had thus possessed himself of a considerable Part of the Island, he divided it into several Provinces, which he bestow'd on those who had distinguished themselves during the Expedition, calling the Island after his own Name *Britain*, and his gallant Company, *Britons*.

CORINEUS, fond of imitating his Leader, called that Part of the Island which fell to his Lot *Corinea* or *Kernow*, now *Cornwal* *.

B R U -

* We are told *Corineus* made choice of this Part of the Island because it was inhabited by

BRUTUS having taken a View of his New Dominions, set himself about building

a great Number of Giants, with whom he took great Pleasure to encounter; for there were none so strong but he attack'd and subdu'd. Among these, there was one of a monstrous Size and great Strength, named *Goermagog*, in Stature twelve Cubits, as *Homer* tells us, whom the *Trojans* had taken Prisoner. For the Story goes, that as *Brutus* and his Companions were solemnizing a Festival to their Gods in the Port where they landed, they were attacked by this Giant, at the Head of twenty of his Associates, who made a great Slaughter among the *Trojans*. Upon this *Brutus* drew together his Forces, fell upon them with such Fury that they soon put them to the Rout, and cut them all in Pieces, excepting *Goermagog*, whose Life *Brutus* had spared, out of a Desire to see a Combat between him and *Corineus*. Upon their very first Onset *Goermagog* broke three of *Corineus's* Ribs, which so enraged him, that he united all his Strength, and taking him on his Shoulders, carried him to the Top of a high Rock, and thence threw him headlong down into the Sea. The Place where he fell was ever after called *Ibamm Goermagog*, i. e. *Goermagog's* Leap.

building Towns and Cities. He encouraged his Subjects to till and manure their Land, and to cultivate other useful Arts and Sciences. He made it his chief Business to govern his People in such a manner as might invite the antient Inhabitants, the *Gymry*, to put themselves under his Protection, in which he succeeded to his Wish: For the *Gymry* seeing the Happiness which his Subjects enjoyed, voluntarily submitted, and acknowledged him for their Sovereign *. After this he erected a City which he called *New Troy*, afterwards corruptly called *Trinovantum*, now *London*. He is said to have given a Body of Laws to the Citizens, and to have taught them Wisdom and Civility. He made it the Place of his Abode, and was buried there, after having reign'd fifteen Years, and twenty-four after his Arrival; *Eli* being at

e 3

time

* *Bochart* supposes that Lesser *Phrygia* was planted by *Ashkenaz*, *Gomer's* eldest Son, if so, then we may easily account for the great Affinity there is between the *Britons* and the *Gymri*.

The HISTORY of

time High-Priest in *Judea*, and the Ark of the Covenant was taken by the *Philistines*. He left three Sons, who divided his Dominions among them; *Locrin*, the eldest took possession of the middle Part of the Island, calling it after his own Name *Loegria* *; *Camber* possessed that Part which lies beyond the River *Severn*, now called *Wales*, antiently *Gymry* or *Cambria*; *Albanact*, the youngest, had the Country called *Albania*, now *Scotland*. Within a few Years after his Accession, *Humber* King of the *Huns* enter'd his Dominions in a hostile manner, whereupon he immediately assembled his Men, marched against him and gave him battle, in which *Albanact* was slain, and his Men forced to retire to *Locrin* for Protection.

LOCRIN as soon as he received notice of this, joined his Brother *Camber*, and marched against *Humber*; accordingly they advanced as far as the River now called *Humber*, where meeting the King of

* We still call *England* *Elobegyr*.

of the *Huns*, gave him Battle, and routed him. In his Flight he made towards the River *Humber*, which attempting to cross, was drowned, and the River was afterwards called by his Name.

AMONG the Spoils of his Camp and Navy, were found three young Ladies of extraordinary Beauty; whereof one was the Daughter of a King in *Germany*, from whence *Humber* had stolen her and the other two, after he had laid waste their Country. The Name of this Princess was *Effyllt*, the most lovely Woman in the World. *Locrin* ravish'd at the Sight of so much Beauty, became in an instant desperately in Love with her, and resolved to marry her; which *Corineus* no sooner heard, but he resented it so highly, that he resolved to go to *Locrin*, and oblige him to perform the Agreement he had made with him to marry his Daughter. *Locrin* being terrified into a Compliance, married *Corineus's* Daughter, named *Guendolen*. However he still retained a passionate Love for *Effyllt*, and so far abandoned himself to his

Locrine marries Guendolen.

Lusts and vicious Inclinations, that he was never easy but in her Company. To which End, he contriv'd Apartments under Ground for her Entertainment and Security, being resolv'd to carry on his Amour in the most private manner, since he could not obtain the Enjoyment of her otherwise. By means of this subterraneous Edifice they often met together, and carry'd on their Amours for seven Years without the Privity of any but his favourite Domesticks; and all under Colour of performing some private Sacrifices to his Gods. The Fruit of this criminal Conversation was a most beautiful Daughter named *Sabre*. *Locrin* had also a Son by his Wife *Guendolen*, named *Maddan*, who was brought up under the Discipline of his Grandfather *Corineus*, King of *Cornwal*. *Locrin's* Fears being remov'd on the Death of his Father-in-Law *Corineus*, he divorc'd *Guendolen*, and advanced *Effyllt* to the Honour of being Queen. *Guendolen* was so exasperated at this, that thenceforth she sought nothing but to revenge it, which she soon after did. To this End she withdrew

Locrin forsakes his Wife.

drew into *Cornwal*, and there assembled a numerous Army. *Locrin* upon the first News of this march'd against her with what Troops he could hastily draw together. The two Armies met near the River *Sture*, where an Engagement ensued, in which *Locrin* received a mortal Wound *Is slain.* by the Shot of an Arrow.

AFTER his Death, *Guendolen* took *Guendolen.* upon her the Government of the Kingdom, and to vent her Rage against *Essilt* gave immediate Orders for her and her Daughter *Sabre* to be thrown into the River now called *Severn*; and to perpetuate the Memory of her Vengeance, proclaimed, that the River be thenceforth called after the Damsel's Name: So that even to this Day the River is called in the *British* Tongue *Havren*, and in *Latin* *Sabrina*.

GUENDOLEN, after the Reign of fifteen Years, resigned the Government to her Son *Maddan*, and retired to her Father's Dominion in *Cornwal*.

THE

THE Prophet *Samuel*, and the famous Poet *Homer*, were her Cotemporaries.

Madawc or
Madoc.

MADAWC is said to have governed forty Years with great Reputation, leaving behind him two Sons, *Mempricius* and *Mael*, who struggled for the Kingdom, each being ambitious of the Sovereignty of the Island. *Mempricius* prompted by his Ambition, caused *Mael* to be assassinated in the Assembly, where they were met under Pretence of composing Matters.

Mempricius or
Membyr.

By this means he became sole Monarch, and afterwards a great Tyrant; treating all those who gave him any Umbrage with Cruelty. He deserted his own Wife, and gave himself up to unnatural Lusts, till at length, in the 20th Year of his Reign, he was devoured by Wolves as he was hunting in a Forest.

THEY make him Cotemporary with *Saul* King of *Israel*.

He

HE was succeeded by his Son *Ebraucus*, Ebraucus or Effroc. called in *British*, *Effroc*; a Prince of great Stature, and prodigious Strength of Body. He was the first since *Brutus* that invaded *Gaul*, and laid waste all its Cities, whereby he got immense Riches, which caused him to erect several Cities, and called one after his own Name, *Kaer Ebrauc*, or *Effroc*, now called *York* *.

HE is said to have had twenty Sons and thirty Daughters by twenty Wives. His Daughters he sent into *Italy* to *Sylvius Alba*, who bestowed them on the *Trojan* Nobility. His Sons, under the Conduct of their Brother *Affaracus*, went over into *Germany*, and being assisted by *Sylvius Alba*, subdued several Provinces, and took Possession of them †.

EBRAU-

* He is said to have built *Alclud* in *Albania*, now *Dunbritton*; and Mount *Agued*, or the Castle of *Maidens*, now *Edinburgh*.

† Some Writers say, that *Ebraucus* was worsted in *Germany*; but that his Son *Brutus* was attended with Success, and repaired the Father's Loss.

EBRAUCUS was succeeded by his Son *Brutus*, surnamed *Greenshield*, i. e. *Tarianlås*, and reigning about twelve Years was succeeded by his Son *Leile*, who lived in a profound Peace, while he maintained good Order in the State. But growing regardless towards the latter End of his Reign, he gave his Subjects an Occasion to rebel. He built in the North a City called by his Name *Kaerleil*, now *Carlisle*, about the time that *Solomon* began to build the Temple of *Jerusalem*.

He was succeeded by his Son *Rhunbaladr brás*, corruptly called *Rhun Hudibras*; he suppressed the Sedition, and restored Peace and good Order throughout all his Dominions. He is said to have built several Cities, viz. *Kaer Keint*, now *Canterbury*; *Kaerguen* now *Winchester*; and *Mount Paladur* now *Shaftsbury* *.

ON

* It is reported, that while the Wall of this Town was building an Eagle spoke; but more probably

ON the Death of *Rhunbaladr brâs*, Bladud or Blethy,
Bladud his Son ascended the Throne; and
 built *Kaerbadon*, now *Bath*.

HE is said to be the Founder of those
 Hot Baths which he dedicated to the God-
 dess *Minerva*, in whose Temple he kept a
 never dying Fire. He apply'd himself
 close to the Mathematicks, and became
 very famous for that Science; for he is
 said, from his Skill therein, to have made
 himself Wings, and attempting to fly, he
 fell down upon the Temple of *Apollo*, in
 the City of *Trinovantum*, and was killed
 upon the Spot *.

THE Prophet *Elias* was his Contem-
 porary.

AFTER

probably a certain Poet or Prophet whose
 Name was *Aquila*, pretended to deliver some
 Prophecies at that time.

* We are told, That *Bladud* took a Jour-
 ney to *Athens*, where he applied himself to
 the Study of Philosophy, and thence brought
 with

Leir.

AFTER this unfortunate Adventure of *Bladud*, *Leir* or *Lyr* his Son ascended the Throne, and governed the Kingdom with great Satisfaction to the People. He built *Kaerleir*, now *Leicester* on the Banks of the River *Sore*.

HE had three Daughters whose Names were *Gonorilla*, *Rbegan*, and *Cordeilla*, but no Male Issue. *Leir* finding himself beginning to decline under the Weight of Age determin'd, to bestow his Daughters on some neighbouring Princes, and so to divide his Kingdom among them; for he was very fond of them all, but excessively so of *Cordeilla* the youngest. He took it into his Head first to prove the Temper of their Hearts, and thence to take his Measures how to share his Kingdom among them. Accordingly he called them together, and asked each of them which loved him most: *Gonorilla*, the eldest, made answer, invoking Heaven, That she loved him better than her own Soul. *Leir* no sooner heard this, but he commended her highly

highly for honouring his declining Years, and told her, that to her and the Husband whom she should chuse, he would give the third Part of his Kingdom. *Rbegan*, the second Daughter, observing her Father's Temper, and how well her Sister succeeded, on the same Demand solemnly protested that she knew not otherwise how to express her Affection, than by telling him, that she loved him above all Creatures. The credulous Father upon this, gave her an equal Reward with her Sister. But *Cordeilla*, the youngest, and hitherto the Darling, was not sway'd by Interest, nor subject to Flattery; as her Heart mov'd her, so her Mouth spoke, and gave free Utterance to the following Words: Father, my Love towards you, says she, is as my Duty commands; What should a Father require? What can a Child promise more? Whoever pretends beyond this must dissemble. At these Words, the Father could not help

with him to *Britain*, four Professors, who taught Philosophy at *Stanford* where he erected a College.

help betraying great Concern and Uneasiness, and withal earnestly entreating her to recal them. But *Cordeilla* reply'd, with an open ingenuous Singleness of Heart, I have only two ways, says she, to answer your Demand; the first, your Command is that I should recant; be pleased then to accept this other, Look how much you have, so much is your Value, and so much I love you. Then hear thou, says *Leir* full of Rage and Resentment, what thy Ingratitude hath gained thee, because thou hast not shewn such Esteem and Reverence to thy aged Father as thy Sisters, you must expect to be excluded from any Share with them in my Kingdom. And without further Delay, gave his two eldest Daughters in Marriage, *Gonorill* to *Maglawn* Duke of Scotland, and *Rbegan* to *Henwin* Duke of Cornwall, with half his Kingdom at present, and the rest at his Death. Not long after this, it came to the Ears of *Aganippus* King of the Gauls, that *Leir* had a Daughter still undisposed, who was the most perfect Beauty of the West; upon which the *Gaulish* King sent

to demand her in Marriage. There was no Difficulty in procuring the King's Consent, who still retain'd his Anger to her, and glad to be rid of such an ungrateful Daughter, as he took her to be, answered the Ambassadors, That he was very willing to bestow his Daughter, but without any Portion, because he had already given away his Kingdom with all his Treasure to his other Daughters. Away went the Ambassadors with this short Answer to *Aganippus*, who was impatient till their Return; and hearing what they had to say, grew more uneasy than before. This new Description of the Wit and Beauty of *Cordeila* by the Ambassadors, added new Fuel to the Flame. He was resolved not to delay his Happiness, so sent them back immediately to acquaint King *Leir*, That he had large Possessions, and desired nothing more than his Daughter *Cordeila*, by whom he expected to be blest with Posterity. Accordingly *Cordeila* was sent to Gaul, and married to *Aganippus*.

SOME time after this King *Leir*, stooping under the Weight of Years, became an easy Prey to his two Daughters and their Husbands, who by continual Encroachments had intirely robbed him of his Kingdom. They told him they thought it was now time for him to retire from the World and take his Rest, by living with his Daughter in *Albania*. This being agreed to, *Maglawn* Duke of *Albania*, was to allow him threescore Knights to attend him. He had not resided there above two Years, but his Daughter grudged at the Number of his Attendants, who began to clamour against the Ministers of the Court, on account of their scanty Allowance, and having acquainted her Husband with it, gave Orders to dismiss thirty of them. Of which when *Leir* was informed, it provoked him so much, that he immediately quitted *Albania*, and went to *Henwin* Duke of *Cornwal*. Here he was received with all the Marks of Esteem and Honour; but before the Conclusion of the Year, there happened a Quarrel between the Men of *Leir*

The Ingratitude of his two eldest Daughters.

and

and the Duke's, which raised great Disturbances in the Family, and caused *Rhegaw* to desire her Father to dismiss all his Attendants except five. Enraged at this Affront, he returned again to *Albania*, in hopes that his hard Treatment, might move in his Daughter some Sense of filial Piety. But she still retaining her Resentment, solemnly swore, he should not stay there, unless he would dismiss his Retinue and be contented with the Attendance of one Knight only.

THE good old Man in this State was reproached by his unkind Daughter who among other things told him, how ill his Desire of Pomp and Grandeur suited with his present Condition. When *Leir* found that she was by no means to be prevailed upon, he was forced to submit and take up with only one Attendant. This grieved him beyond expression, and caused him to reflect upon the Misery of human Life, and the Inconstancy of Fortune. With a Mind full of these heavy Thoughts, and uncertain what to determine; the afflicted *Leir*,

at last resolved to cross the Sea, and visit his youngest Daughter. When once he found himself so determined, he could not help accusing himself for his Unkindness and unnatural Behaviour to her, which made him fear he should now receive no Succour from her Hands. But the Greatness of his Mind not suffering him to rest under these Circumstances, he embark'd for *Gaul*. On his Arrival he found the Difference between specious Pretences, and undissembled Tenderneſs; and how true that Saying, That where there is the least Noise, there is commonly the greatest Depth. For *Cordeila* no ſooner heard of his Arrival and Diſtreſs, than all in Tears, immediately ſent for one of her Domeſticks, in whom ſhe moſt confided, and ordered him to convey her Father privately to ſome Sea-port Town, there to cloath him, bathe him, and to furniſh him with ſuch Ornaments and Attendants as became his Dignity, and when this was done, to ſend ſpeedy Notice of his Arrival to *Aganippus*.

THE Messenger executed her Orders with all the secrecy imaginable, and sent word to King *Aganippus* and his Queen, of *Leir's* safe Arrival in *Gaul*; how he was expelled his Kingdom by his Sons-in-Law, and was come to implore their Assistance for the Recovery of his Dominions. Hereupon *Cordeila*, with the King her Husband, and all the Nobility of the Kingdom, went out to meet him, and to pay their Compliments to the King of *Britain*. *Aganippus* detained him at Court, and submitted to his Management the whole Power of his Kingdom, till he could secure to him the quiet Possession of his own. In the mean time he sent Officers throughout all the Provinces of his Empire, to raise what Forces they could, in order to restore his Father-in-law to his Kingdom of *Britain*. Pursuant to this Design, they drew all their Forces together, embarked and set sail for *Britain*; where they were no sooner arrived, than they engaged the two Sons-in-law, and defeated them. Thus having reduced the whole Kingdom, and intirely settled

Leir restored.

The HISTORY of

settled the State, he reigned in Peace three Years, and then died. Soon after *Aganippus* also died, upon whose Demise *Cordeila* took Possession of the Kingdom, and buried her Father in a certain Vault which she ordered to be made for him under the River *Sore* in *Leicester*. Here *Leir* is said to have built a Temple to *Janus*, where all the Artificers of the City and Country thereabouts resorted on the Anniversary Solemnity of that Festival to begin their yearly Work and Labours.

Cordeila.

CORDEILA after five Years peaceable Possession of the Kingdom found herself involved in Troubles. For *Margan* Son of *Maglawn* Duke of *Scotland* and *Cynedda*, Son of *Henwin* Duke of *Cornwal*, began to entertain Thoughts of ascending the Throne. These two Brothers, after their Father's Death, succeeding them in their Dukedoms, were incensed to the highest degree to see themselves under the Government and Conduct of a Woman; therefore they formed a Party strong enough to deprive her of the Sovereignty. Several

ral Battles were fought, in which many fell on both Sides *. But at length her Sisters Sons prevailed, and took her Prisoner; but *Cordeila* preferring Death to Captivity, laid violent Hands on herself, and was buried at *Leicester*. After this, *Margan* and *Cynedda* divided the Kingdom between them, by which Division *Margan* had all the Northern Provinces beyond the *Humber*, and *Cynedda* the other Part from the same River Westward. But before two Years were expired, *Margan* was highly dissatisfied with his Share, and began to repent of his Bargain. Those that were about him, helped also to exasperate him, by representing to him, the Injury he had done himself by this Agreement, and that he should claim the Sovereignty in Right of his Birth, being the eldest Sister's Son. Influenced by these Suggestions, he invaded *Cynedda's* Country, and committed great Devastations. *Cynedda* alarmed

Margan aspiring to the Sovereignty is slain by Cynedda.

f 4 at

* Our Antiquities mention eighteen Battles that were fought in this Contention between King *Leir's* Daughters.

at this Invasion, immediately drew together all the Forces he was able, and marched against his Brother. The Armies engaging, *Margan* was soon defeated, and obliged to fly into *Kambria* or *Kymry*, where a bloody Engagement ensued, in which *Margan* was slain, and hence the Country and Abbey acquired the Name of *Margan*.

AFTER this Victory, *Cynedda* gained the Sovereignty of the whole Island, which he governed with great Reputation thirty three Years. He erected a Temple to *Minerva* at *Bangor* in *Wales*, and a Temple to *Mercury* in *Cornwal*, where he was born. About this Time flourished the Prophets *Isaiab* and *Hosea*, and *Rome* was built in the Calends of *May*.

Rhywallon.

RHYWALLON succeeded his Father *Cynedda*, and proved both good and fortunate. In his Time, we are told, it rained Blood three Days together, and vast swarms of Flies fell, which stung several Men to death. This Monarch died after

a Reign of forty-six Years, and was buried at *York*.

AFTER him came his Son *Gwrgust*, *Gwrgust*. renowned for his Valour and Conduct, he reigned thirty-seven Years, and as he had no Children, he left the Crown to his Brother *Seisyllt*, or *Sysyllt*; we know nothing *Seisyllt*. more of this Monarch, but that he reigned forty-nine Years, and was buried at *Bath*, leaving his Crown to *Iago* his Son, who was *Iago*. very unlike his Uncle *Gwrgust*, being slothful and unactive; he was seized in the twenty-fifth Year of his Reign with an Illness which brought him insensibly to his End. After the Death of *Iago*, *Kynfarch* *Kynfarch*. the Son of *Sysyllt* was placed on the Throne. He was a Prince of great Reputation and Esteem among the *Britons*, and after a Reign of fifty-four Years in profound Peace and Plenty, he died, and was buried at *York*. He was succeeded by his Son *Gorbodug*; *Gorbodug*. we find nothing particular concerning this Prince, who reigned however sixty-three Years, and was buried at *London*. He was succeeded by his two Sons *Ferrex* and *Porrex*. *Ferrex and Porrex*.

rex. These two Brothers reigned together in Peace five Years, till *Porrex*, prompted by his restless Ambition, formed a Design against his Brother's Life, which *Ferrex* discovering, he escaped into *Gaul*, where he procured such Aid as enabled him to make War on his Brother. They soon came to an Engagement, in which *Ferrex* was slain.

BUT as he was the Darling of his Mother *Eiden*, she was incensed to the highest degree at the Loss of her Son, and thought of nothing but Revenge; accordingly she went to his Bed-chamber, and there being assisted by her Women, murdered him while he was asleep. Nor did her Revenge stop here, for she cut his Body in Pieces. After this Barbarity, she became so very odious to the *Britons*, that they caused her to be put to Death.

Some Writers will have the Line of *Bru-tus* to end with the Death of these two Brothers. But our *British* Genealogies plainly prove the contrary, and continue the
Line

Line of *Brutus* in *Dunwallo Moelmutius* after this manner; that he was the Son of *Cloten* or *Clydno*, the Son of *Kynfarch*, the Son of *Prydain*, the Son of *Æddmawr* Son of *Antonius*, Son of *Sysyllt*, Son of *Gwrgust*, Son of *Rhywallon*, Son of *Cynedda*, Son of *Rbegaw* Daughter and Heir of King *Leir*.

ÆDDMAWR and his Son *Prydain* were Dukes of *Cornwal*, which Province was of great Antiquity among the *Britons*, who often chose their Kings out of that Royal Line. These Dukes were Princes of Sovereign Authority in their Territories, and bore as great Sway in *Britain*, as any Petty King. *Cloten*, the right Heir to the Sovereignty, seeing the Kingdom rent into several Factions, sat down contented with his Dukedom.

AFTER the Death of *Porrex*, great Disturbances arose in the Island rent into five Kingdoms, whose Kings mutually harassed one another, as some say, for fifty Years. But no sooner was *Cloten*, or *Clydno* Duke of *Cornwal*, laid in his Grave,
than

Dunwallo
Moelmutius.

than his Son *Dunwallo Molmutius*, or *Dynwal Moelmud* began to look to his Interest, and take Measures to put a Stop to these Practices and Contentions. To this End, he first attacked *Pynor* King of *Locgria*, and in a Battle slew him. Upon which *Rudac* King of *Kambria*, and *Slater* King of *Albania*, entered into a League against him, and wasted his Country with Fire and Sword. *Dunwallo*, on the first News of their Invasion, marched against them with ten thousand Men, and gave them Battle. The Fight lasted the greater part of the Day, and the Success was yet very uncertain; when *Dunwallo* bethought himself of a Stratagem, which made Victory incline to his Side. He selected out of his Army six hundred resolute Men, and ordered them to put on the Armour of their slain Enemies, as he had done, and afterwards advance as expeditiously as they could through the Enemies Ranks, till they came to the very Place where the two Kings took their Post, enjoining them to fall upon them and kill them. Which was no sooner executed, but *Dunwallo* with-
drew

A Stratagem
of Dunwallo.

drew with his Men to put off the Ene-
 my's Armour, and put on his own again.
 Then exhorting his Troops not to have the
 least dread of an Army destitute of their
 chief Commanders; they furiously fell upon
 the Enemy, and in a short time obtained
 a compleat Victory. After this Success,
Dunwallo or *Dyfnwal*, without loss of
 Time marched into the Enemies Countries,
 and brought those Nations under Subjec-
 tion. When he had reduced the whole
 Island, he was invested with the Dignity
 of Monarch, to which none had a better
 Claim than himself. To this End, he
 caused a golden, or a more august sort of *He first wore*
 Crown than had been used before, to be *a Crown of*
 made. *Gold.*

He applied himself to the restoring the *And made good*
 shattered Affairs of *Britain*, and to enact *Laws.*
 good and wholesome Laws, which, we
 are told, served for Foundation, to those
 published by King *Alfred*. He bestowed
 in Cities and Temples the Priviledges of
 sanctuary, and to the Highways leading
 them; being extreamly desirous to put

a stop to those Disorders, which the Civil War had caused in the Kingdom, and root out all Violence and Oppression. He measured the Island from *Penryn Blaetbaon*, i. e. *Cathness Point* in Scotland, to *Penryn Penwaeth*, i. e. the Lands End of Cornwall. He reigned forty Years, and dying left the Kingdom in a most flourishing Condition. He was buried in the City of *Lundain* now *London*, in the Temple of Peace, which he had built there. *Ponticus Virunnius*, says he was handsome and well proportioned, and had yellow curled Hair reaching down to the Calf of his Legs.

*Belinus and
Brennus.*

ON the Death of *Dunwallo Moelmutius* his two Sons *Belinus* and *Brennus*, contended for the Crown. After many sharp Conflicts, they were by the Mediation of Friends brought at last to a Reconciliation. By the Treaty, which was managed by the Arbitrators, *Belinus* as the eldest Son was to have the Sovereignty, and all South of *Humber*, and *Brennus* all North of *Humber* to *Cathness Point*. Upon this Partition the two Brothers lived in good Understanding in

ing for five Years; but very soon after the Scene was changed, *Brennus*, by the Instigations of some Incendiaries, who represented to him, how he, who had so often distinguished himself by his Courage, and routed *Ceulfus* Duke of the *Morini*, could bear to see his Brother his Superior, as Monarch, and therefore advised him to go to *Norway*, and marry the Daughter of *Elfin*, King of the *Norwegians*, by whose Aid he might free himself from so uneasy a Dependence. Influenced by these and the like Suggestions, went to *Norway*, and married the King's Daughter. After his Departure, *Belinus*, who was informed of his Designs, marched into *Northumberland*, and possessed himself of his Brother's Country, and all his strong holds, which he garrisoned with his own Men. *Brennus* being informed of what *Belinus* had done, obtained the King's Consent to sail for *Britain*, with an Army of *Norwegians*. But while he was under sail, he was overtaken by *Guthlack*, King of *Denmark*, who had closely pursued him, and who had conceived a violent

Brennus goes to Norway, and marries the King's Daughter.

The HISTORY of

lent Passion for the King of *Norway's* Daughter, sometime before *Brennus's* Marriage. And hearing that he was carrying her off, he immediately assembled his Fleet, and embarked with all possible expedition, in pursuit of him. In the first Encounter *Gutblach* had the good Fortune to take the very Ship in which the Lady was; but during the Engagement a sudden Storm arose, which separated the two Navies, and drove them upon different Coasts. *Gutblach*, with all his Ships, and the Ship wherein the Lady was, were driven on the Shore of *Northumberland*, where on their landing they were brought before *Belinus*, who was on the Coast, ready to oppose his Brother's Landing. *Belinus* no sooner knew who and whence they were, but he was overjoy'd at this lucky and unexpected Accident, by which he hoped his Brother's Project would miscarry. Shortly after, *Brennus's* Fleet that had been dispersed up and down, was got together, and arrived in *Scotland*, where he was not a little surprized to hear, that his Wife was in his Brother's Power; he therefore sent Messen-

A Naval Engagement betwixt Brennus and Gutlach.

gers

gers to him, desiring him to deliver to him his Wife and Kingdom, which if he refused, he protested that he would lay waste the whole Island, and cut off his Head, whenever he could come to an Engagement with him. But *Belinus* flatly refused to comply with his Demands, and assembling together a numerous Army, went in quest of his Brother. The two Armies met nigh the Wood called *Calaterium*, i. e. *Lbuyny Caladyr*, where a Battle was fought with great Slaughter on both Sides, or as the Chronicle expresses it, they were cut down like standing Corn by Reapers. In the End Victory declar'd itself for the *Britons*, and *Brennus* having lost a great Part of his Army, was obliged to flee with the rest in a single Ship into *Gaul*.

*The Battle at
Lhûyn y
Caladyr.*

FROM this Battle that Tract of Country acquired the Name of *Brennicb*, in Latin *Bernicia*.

AFTER this Victory *Belinus* came to *York*, where he summoned a Council of his Nobility in order to consult what he
g should

should do with the King of *Denmark*, who had sent a Message to him out of Prison, with an Offer of Submission, and paying an yearly Tribute, if he would grant him leave to depart with his Mistress; all which was readily granted upon the Terms offered.

*Belinus re-
vives and con-
firms some of
his Father's
Laws.*

THE Tranquillity *Belinus* enjoy'd after this, gave him an Opportunity of settling the Civil Concerns of the Kingdom, confirming the Laws which his Father had made, and giving Orders for the due Administration of Justice *. He gave Orders that Cities, and the Highways leading to them, should enjoy the same Privileges that his Father had established. He likewise ordered the Ways begun by his Father to be paved with Stone and Mortar, and caused one to be made over the Breadth of the Kingdom, leading from
Me-

* Here *Geoffry of Monmouth*, in his Translation, refers the curious Reader to the *Moelmutine Laws*, (which *Gildas* translated from *British* into *Latin*) for further Satisfaction.

Menevia, now *St. Davids*, to *Hamo's* Port, now *Southampton*, and two others to go overthwart the Island, for a Passage to the rest of the Cities; all which Roads have been since attributed to the Romans.

WHILE *Belinus* was making these Regulations, and ruling his Kingdom with Wisdom and Equity, *Brennus* who had shelter'd himself in *Gaul*, was busy in soliciting to his Assistance the Princes of that Country; but he found no Relief, till he came to *Segin* Duke of the *Allobroges*, who received him very civilly. During his Stay here, he behaved himself in such a manner that he became the greatest Favourite in the Court. The Duke was prodigiously pleased with his Skill in hawking and hunting, and conceived so great an Esteem for him that he gave him his only Daughter in Marriage, and promised in Case he should have Issue by her to supply him with Money, Troops, and Ships, for the Recovery of his Kingdom.

THE Nuptials were celebrated with great Magnificence, and the Nobility of the Country came in Crowds to pay their Compliments to him, as the Successor to the Throne. About the End of the Year the Duke died, and then *Brennus* began to take all necessary Measures to accomplish his Designs. He distributed the Duke's Treasures that had been heaped up from the time of his Ancestors among the Nobility, and by his noble Qualities he had so captivated the People, that they were ready to attend him whithersoever he went. Having thus gained an universal Esteem, and Affection, he soon saw himself at the Head of a very numerous Army, with which, after he had settled his Affairs in *Gaul*, he embark'd for *Britain*. When the News reached *Belinus*, that his Brother had enter'd the Kingdom with an Army, he drew together all his Forces and advanced to meet him. But as both Armies were preparing to fight, *Cornwen* or *Gorvyn* their Mother, who was yet living, glowing with a Desire to see her Son, whom

whom she had not seen of a long time, flew through the Ranks to find him. No sooner did she reach the Place where he stood, but she cast herself upon his Neck, embraced and kissed him: Then uncovering her Bosom, thus address'd him with Sighs:
" Oh, my dear Son, remember these
" Breasts that gave you suck, and the
" Womb wherein you was formed, and
" from whence you received your Birth,
" whilst I endured the greatest Pain and
" Anguish. Let then, what I have suffer'd for you, make such an Impression
" on your Mind, as to cause you to lay
" aside your Resentment, and be reconciled to your Brother. Consider, that
" the Difference between you was not of
" his seeking, but your own, and which
" has proved the Instrument of Good to
" you; being the means of obtaining that
" Kingdom which you now possess.
" Therefore I conjure you by all the Ties
" of filial Duty to agree with your Brother, and let Anger give place to natural
" Affection."

THESE Words made so deep an Impression upon his Mind, that he immediately pulled off his Head-piece, and went directly with her to his Brother *Belinus*, who seeing him approach with a mild and peaceable Countenance, threw down his Arms, and ran to embrace him. After mutual Protestations of Friendship, they went together amicably to *Trinovantum*, now *London*, to confer together where to turn their united Arms. They unanimously resolved to undertake the Reduction of all the Provinces of *Gaul*, and accordingly crossed over into that Country, where they reduced many Cities.

BUT as they were originally one and the same People, they soon came to an Accommodation, and agreed to join Forces for the Invasion of *Italy*. Having joined the *Britons*, *Allobroges* and *Senones* into one Body, they resolved to march into *Italy*. Hereupon they passed the *Alps*, wasting and destroying whatever came in their way. In the mean time, News was brought

brought the Senate, that *Belinus* and *Brennus* were advancing at the Head of their united Forces towards *Rome*. Alarmed at this unexpected Invasion, they immediately dispatch'd Deputies to offer Peace and Submission, with large Presents of Gold and Silver. The two Kings readily complied with their Request, and after taking Hostages, left *Italy*, and took their Rout towards *Germany*. While they were employ'd in those Parts, the *Romans* recovering from their Fear, began to repent of what they had done, and having assembled a considerable Body of Forces, sent them to assist the *Germans*. This so provoked the two Kings, that they consulted together about the most proper Measures for carrying on a War with both Nations. They agreed that *Belinus* with the *Britons* was to engage the *Germans*, while *Brennus* and his Forces march'd to *Rome* to take Vengeance on the *Romans*. Their Design was no sooner perceived by the *Italians* but they quitted *Germany*, and made all the Expedition they possibly could to reach *Rome* before *Brennus*. *Belinus* ha-

ving notice of this, speedily led back his Army in the Night, to take possession of a Valley through which the Enemy was to pass, and there lay in Ambush for them. Accordingly the *Italians* arrived the next Day at the Place, where they soon discover'd the Valley glittering with Armour, which struck them with a sudden Panick, imagining that *Brennus*, with the *Senon Gauls*, was there. *Belinus* laying hold of this Opportunity, sally'd out all on a sudden, and with incredible Fury fell upon them, made a great Slaughter of them, and obliged them to retire in great Confusion. The Approach of the Night prevented the victorious *Britons* from pursuing them, and in all Probability cutting off the whole Army.

AFTER this Victory, he went to join *Brennus*, who had now spent three Days in besieging *Rome*. But as the City was well garrison'd and stored with Provisions, they could not with their united Forces reduce it. Whereupon despairing to take the City by Assault, they erected a Gallows

lows before the Gates to terrify the besieged, threatening to hang up the Hostages, unless they would instantly surrender. But the *Romans* not at all touched with Compassion at the unhappy Fate of their Sons and Kindred, continued inflexible, and held out till News was brought them that their Consuls were within a Days March of the City, and designed to relieve them the next Morning. Hereupon they determined to sally out on the Enemy, not doubting but if the Consuls with their Forces fell upon them at the same time, the Besiegers might be repulsed, and forced to abandon the Enterprize. And accordingly the Consuls came to their Relief, and advancing in a close Body, fell on the Besiegers with great Resolution. This sudden Appearance of the Consul *Fabius* The Consul Fabius. inspired the *Romans* with new Courage, and struck no small Terror into the *Britons* and *Gauls*, who notwithstanding their being attacked on both Sides, maintained their Posts with great Intrepidity. The *Romans* by their vigorous Sallies made a dreadful Slaughter of the Confederates, which

The HISTORY of

which the Brothers no sooner perceived, but they ordered them to be attacked with great Fury. The Confederates hereupon doubled their Efforts, and push'd the *Romans* so vigorously, that not being able to stand the Shock, were forced to retire. The Victory being thus obtained, the Brothers enter'd the City at the Head of their Army, and distributed all the Treasures which they found in the City among the Soldiers. After this Battle, *Brennus* we are told, stay'd in *Italy*, where he grievously oppressed the People.

If the curious Reader would have a farther Account of his Exploits, he is referred to the *Roman* Histories where they are delivered at large.

As for *Belinus*, he returned to *Britain*, and applied himself wholly to the Arts of Peace. He repaired his Castles and Towns, and beautified *London* with a Tower, and a fine Gate on which the Citizens bestowed his Name, calling it *Belinsgate*. He built a City upon the River *Ux* in *South-Wals*,

Wales, now in *Monmouthshire*, and called it *Caerwysk*, which Name continued till the coming in of the *Romans*, who call'd it *Caer Legion* and *Caer Lleon*, from the *Roman Legions* which used to take up their Winter Quarters there. In his Days we are told, the Island abounded in Wealth. He was the first that appointed his Body to be burnt, and the Ashes repositied in a Golden Urn, fixed on the Top of the Tower, which he erected over *Belinsgate*. He reigned twenty-one Years alone, and jointly with *Brennus* five.

HE was succeeded by his Son *Gurgunt* Gurgunt
Barbtruch or
Farfdrwch. *Barbtruch* or *Gwrgain Farfdrwch*, i. e. *Gurgain with a red Beard*, who treading in the Footsteps of his Father, was honoured and respected by all his Subjects. When the King of the *Dacians* refused Payment of the Tribute which he used to pay to his Father, he drew together all his Troops, and set sail for *Denmark*. After several Encounters, they came at last to a general Engagement, in which the *Dacians* were defeated and their King slain.

The HISTORY of

HAVING thus brought *Denmark* under Subjection again, they embarked in order to return home. As they were sailing back through the *Orkney* Islands, they fell in with a Fleet of thirty sail, full of Men and Women. At the Sight of this Fleet *Gwrgan* made up to them, and demanded of them whence they came, and whither they were going! Their Captain, whose Name was *Bartholin*, answered, that they had been driven out of *Spain*, to seek their Fortunes in other Countries, and that they had been above a Twelve-month roaming about the Seas in quest of a new Settlement; therefore he most humbly intreated him to grant them some Place in *Britain* for their Habitation, being desirous to live under his Subjection. *Gwrgan* came readily into what the Captain desired of him, and accordingly sent Guides with them to *Ireland*, which was then depopulated by Pestilence, and gave them that Island for their Habitation. By this Colony, and their Descendants, the Island was peopled, who were afterwards called *Irish*. *Gwrgan Barvryth*
after

after a Reign of nineteen Years, died and was buried at *Caer Leon* upon *Uſk*.

HE was ſucceeded by his Son *Gutbelin*, Guthelyn. or *Cubelyn*, who treating his Subjects with Tenderneſs and Clemency, was greatly reſpected by them. He had for his Wife that eminent and accomplished Lady, named *Martia*: As ſhe was renowned for her wonderful Beauty, ſo was ſhe no leſs famous on account of her Wiſdom and extraordinary Abilities of Mind. She publiſhed a Body of Laws, entitled, *Martian Laws*; which *Gildas* afterwards tranſlated into *Latin*, and King *Alfred* into the *Saxon Tongue*. On the Death of *Guthelyn*, ſhe took upon her the Government of the Kingdom during her Son's Minority, and after a glorious Reign of ſeven Years, ſhe died, and was ſucceeded by her Son Syſyllt. *Syſyllt*. This Prince reigned fifteen Years after the Death of his Mother, and died, leaving a Son named *Kimarus* or *Kynfarch*, Kynfarch. to ſucceed him, who, after he had reigned three Years, was aſſaſinated, as he was taking the Diverſion of hunting. He died without

without Issue, and was succeeded by his Brother *Dan*.

Dan.

ALL we know of this Prince is, he governed very imprudently, and with little or no Regard to his Subjects; so that his Reign, which was eight Years, was very much disturbed. He was succeeded by his

Morydd.

Son *Morud* or *Morydd*. This Prince is recorded to be famous for his great Strength of Body; but withal of so cruel a Temper, as in the Height of his Passion, not to spare either Friend or Foe, if any Weapon was at hand. He was of a graceful Aspect, extremely liberal and valiant.

*King of the
Morini in-
vades Nor-
thumberland.*

IN his time a certain King of the *Morini*, i. e. the ancient Inhabitants of the Low Countries, now *Flanders*, invaded *Northumberland*, and began to lay waste the Country. *Morydd* as soon as he was informed of this, levied a considerable Army, and marched to give him battle; in which he performed more than could naturally be expected from a single Person, having killed, with his own Hand, a great many

many of the Enemy. But he afterwards sullied the Glory of his Victory, by the cruel and barbarous Usage of his Prisoners. While he was giving several Instances of his cruel and barbarous Temper, an Accident fell out which put an End to his Wickedness. Having heard that a formidable Monster from the *Irish* Sea, infested the Coast, and was continually devouring the People that passed by that Way. He ventur'd to combat the destructive Animal, and after having spent all his Darts upon it to no Purpose, the Monster advanced towards him, and with open Jaws swallow'd him up like a small Fish, after which the Monster was never seen. And this, we are told, happen'd in the eighth Year of his Reign, leaving five Sons, *Gorbonian*, *Arthfol*, *Elidur*, *Owen*, and *Prydur*. *Gorbonian* the eldest succeeded him, who is represented as an excellent Prince, and possessed of every Quality necessary for the well governing of a Kingdom. He repaired the Temples, Cities, and Castles, throughout *Britain*, and caused several others

Morydd devoured by a Monster.

Gorbonian or Gorbonyawn.

others to be built. He encouraged his Subjects to cultivate their Lands, and took care to protect them against any Injury or Oppression of their Lords.

IN short, he made it his whole Study to render his Kingdom flourishing, and his People happy. And after a glorious Reign of ten Years, he died to the great Grief of his Subjects, and was buried at *Trinovantum*. He left behind him a Son of tender Age named *Rhys* or *Regni*, from whom the Inhabitants of the Counties of *Surry* and *Sussex* took their Name.

Archigallo or
Arthol.

AFTER the Death of *Gorboniarn*, his Brother *Archigallo* or *Arthol* took possession of the Throne, who no way resembled his Brother, he became so contemptible, that after a Reign of twelve Months, was deposed, and his Brother *Elidur* was placed in his room.

ELIDUR GWAR, i. e. *Elidur* the Pious, was a Prince of a mild and tender Disposition, for after he had reigned
five

five Years, as he was hunting one Day in the Forest of *Calaterium*, in the North, or *Libyn y Caladyr*, he happened to meet his deposed Brother, who had been in several foreign Courts to implore Assistance for the recovering of his Kingdom; but found none disposed to support him. *Eli-dur* touch'd with his Misfortunes, received him with open Arms, and took with him to the City of *Alcluid*, and there concealed him in his Bed-chamber. After this, *Eli-dur* devised the following Expedient for the restoring his Brother to his lost Dominions. He feigned himself exceeding Ill, and sent for all his Nobility to come and see him. As soon as he was informed, that they were all arrived in the City, he sent for them one after another, and compelled them to restore and obey his Brother; whereupon they immediately repaired to *York*, and *Elidur* took the Crown from his Head, and put it on that of *Archigallo*, declaring him thereby Sovereign of *Britain*, whence he obtained the Name of *Pious*.

ARCHIGALLO or *Arthol*, who a little before was an Object of Compassion, saw himself now at the Head of a powerful Kingdom. He was no sooner on the Throne again, but he became a perfect Convert, pursued Measures quite contrary to his first, in introducing a good Regulation in this State, and impartially distributing Justice. After he had reigned ten Years with great applause, he died, and was buried at *Caerlyr*, now *Carlisle*.

Elidur 2d time.

THO' *Elidur* was placed on the Throne again with the Consent of the General Assembly, yet his two Brothers, *Owen* and *Peredyr* disputed the Possession of it with him. This Contest was decided by a Battle, in which *Elidur* was taken Prisoner, whereupon they ordered him to be conducted to *Trinovantum*, and gave Charge for his being imprisoned in the Tower there.

AFTER this, they divided the Kingdom between them, all South of *Humber* fell to *Owen's* Share, and all North to *Peredyr*. These

Owen and Peredyr.

These Brothers reigned together seven Years, and then *Owen* died. *Peredyr* being now sole Monarch, proved a gracious and mild Prince, which gained him the Hearts of his Subjects, so that his good Brother *Elidur* was now scarcely missed. But it is very remarkable that *Peredyr* was soon taken off, to make way for *Elidur's* quick Release from Prison, and Advancement to the Throne again. He reigned four Years in profound Peace and Tranquility, highly beloved and esteemed by his Subjects, on account of his many Virtues, after which he died, and was buried at *Caerlyr*. Elidur 3d time.

He was succeeded by *Rhys*, corruptly Rhys. called *Regin* or *Regni*, Son of *Gorboniawn*, who treading in the Footsteps of his Uncle, was equally beloved and rever'd by his Subjects. He was succeeded by *Morgan*, Son Morgan. of *Artbol* or *Archigallo*, who imitating his immediate Predecessors, liv'd all his Days in Peace. He was succeeded by his Brother Eniawn or Eineon. *Eniawn* or *Eineon*, who was very different from his Brother, being of a fierce and cruel Temper, which render'd him so odious

Idwal or E.
doallus.

odious to his Subjects, that they deprived him of his Kingdom in the sixth Year of his Reign, and placed *Idwall*, the Son of *Owen*, in the Throne.

He is said to have employed his Reign, in well regulating the Affairs of his Kingdom, and in gaining the Esteem and Affection of his Subjects, to which, the Fate of his Cousin *Eingon*, contributed not a little.

Rhun.
Gereint.

AFTER him came *Rhun* the Son of *Eli-dur*, and then *Gereint* or *Geruntius* his Brother succeeded him, who is represented as a Prince of a peaceable Disposition. He

Cadell.
Coel.
Porrex.

was succeeded by his Son *Cadell*, and after him came *Coel*, and after *Coel* came *Porrex*. He is represented as a Prince of great Generosity and Affability. After *Porrex*

Kereni or
Cherin.
Fulgen.
Eidal and An-
drew Urien.

reigned *Kerein* or *Kereni*, who had three Sons, *Fulgen*, *Eidal* and *Andrew*, who all reigned successively. Then succeeded *U-*

Ithel.

rien, the Son of *Andrew*, and *Urien* was succeeded by his Son *Ithel* or *Eliud*, a Prince of great Knowledge and Skill in

Astro-

Astrology. After him reigned *Clydawc*, Clydawc.
 who was succeeded by his Son *Elydno*, or as Elydno.
 some call him *Clydno*, of whom we know
 nothing, but only he was Father to *Gwr* Gwrgust.
gust, who left the Crown to his Son *Meirion* Meirion.
 or *Merianus*; he was succeeded by his Son
Bleuddyd, in whose Days the *Cimmerians* Bleuddyd.
 or *Cymbrians*, inhabiting the Country called
Cymbria Kersonesus, now *Holstein*, over-ran
 many Countries, designing to possess them-
 selves of *Italy*. *Bleuddyd* was succeeded by
 his Son *Caph* or *Caxbo*, who was succeeded Caph or Cax-
 by his Son *Owen*, and *Owen* by his Son ho.
Seiffilt or *Sysyllt*, and *Sysyllt* by *Blegywryd*. Owen.
 This Prince was famous for his Skill in Mu- Sysyllt.
 fick, and composing Odes and Songs, which B'egywryd the
 used to be sung at their Games and other 56th Supreme
 Solemnities, accompanied with Instrumen- King of Bri-
 tal Musick, whence the *Britons* called him t in.
Dwey Ghuarae, i. e. the God of Games or
 Pastimes.

AFTER him reigned *Archmael* his Bro- Archmael or
 ther, or as he is called by some *Arthafel*, Arthafel.
 after him his Son *Eidol*, in whose Days, we Eidol.
 are told, uncommon Fires were seen in the
 Air.

Rydion. Air. He was succeeded by his Son *Ry-
Rhytherech or dion*; *Rydion* by his Son *Rhytherech* or *Ry-
Ryderch.* *derch* by *Sawl Penissel*, i. e. *Samuel* with
Sawl Penissel. a low or humble Head. He was succeed-
Pyr. ed by his Son *Pyr*, and *Pyr* by his Son
Capoir. *Capoir* or *Kaxor*, after whom came his
Minogan. Son *Minogan* or *Gilquellus*. He is said to
have subdued the Islands in the *Tyrrhen* Sea,
and to cause Justice to be impartially distri-
buted to all his Subjects; and after a Reign
of seven Years, according to *Vitus*, of four
say others, he died, and left the Crown to
his Son *Beli*.

Beli. *BELI*, commonly called by the *Bri-
tons* *Beli Mawr*, i. e. *Beli* the Great, suc-
ceeded his Father *Minogan*. To this Prince
most of our Books of Pedigrees do ascend.
He is represented as a good King, govern-
ing his People with great Reputation, and
after having filled the Throne forty Years,
died, leaving three Sons, *Lud*, *Kaswalbaun*,
or *Cassivelaunus*, *Nymnyan*, or *Nennius*.
Lud. *Lud* succeeded his Father in the Kingdom,
and is said to rebuild the Walls of *Trino-
vantium*, which he beautified with Towers.

Here

Here he kept his Court, and made it the Capitol of his Kingdom, whence it was afterwards called *Caer Lud* or *Lud's Town*, now *London*.

He was highly beloved by his Subjects on account of his Valour and magnificent Entertainments. After a glorious Reign of eleven Years, he died, and was buried by the Gate of that City, which from him was called *Lud's Gate*. *Gildas*, says, that the changing the Name of *Trinovantum* for *Caer Lud*, occasioned a sharp Dispute between *Lud* and his Brother *Nennius*, who was very unwilling to have the ancient Name abolished. *Lud* left three Sons, *Avaruy* who is called by *Cæsar* *Mandubratius*, and by some in *Latin*, *Androgeus*, he sent for *Cæsar* into *Britain*, accompanied him to *Rome*, from whence he never returned. *Tenevan* or *Tenuantius*, and * *Casnar Wledig*, from whom descend

* The Sons of *Casnar Wledig* are celebrated in an ancient *British* Manuscript, called *Mabinogi*, as Princes of warlike Temper and great Exploits.

The HISTORY of

ed *Elifan Glodryd* Lord of *Meliennyth*, *Radnor* and *Buellt*. These Sons of *Lud*, on account of their Minority, were left to the Care of their Uncle *Caswalbaun*, or *Cassivelaunus*, who had so wrought himself into the Esteem and Affection of the People, that they unanimously resolved to elect him King. Being placed on the Throne, he was willing to do Honour to his Nephews, upon whom he bestowed the Earldom of *Trinovantum* and *Kent*, and the Earldom of *Cornwal*.

In the eighth Year of his Reign, *Britain* was invaded by the *Romans*, under the Conduct of *Julius Cæsar*, who having reduced all *Gaul*, and finding great Supplies were sent to them out of *Britain*. For *Caswalbaun* with his two Nephews *Guenymuyn* and *Guanar*, Sons of his Sister *Aryanrbod* by *Leon wal Nuyore*, i. e. Son of *Wyffre*, had brought with them into *Gaulan* Army of twenty-one Thousand Men, who never returned to *Britain*, but spent their Days in *Aquitain*.

End of the FIRST BOOK,



THE
HISTORY
OF THE
ANCIENT BRITONS.

BOOK II.

JULIUS CÆSAR having conquer'd all *Gaul*, and spread the Terror of the *Roman* Name beyond the *Rhine*, resolv'd on an Expedition into *Britain*, and be reveng'd on those Islanders for sending Supplies to the Enemies of the Common Wealth. And so the time of making War was far spent, yet he thought it might be of great Advantage to him, if he took a View only of this Island, if he could learn the Nature of the

Cæsar's Expedition into Britain.

VOL. I.

B

In-

The HISTORY of

Inhabitants, and be acquainted with the Government, their Ports and most commodious Havens. All which were almost wholly unknown to all but the Merchants that traded on its Coasts. He sent for some of these; but they, who knew only the Sea Coasts, and those Countries which lie opposite against *Gaul*, were not capable of giving him that Information he desired *. In this Uncertainty he thought fit to send out *Volsenus*, with a Galley, to view the Coast while he himself went with all his Forces into the Country of the *Morini*, now *Flanders* and *Picardy*, because from thence was the shortest Passage into *Britain*. Thither he commands all the Ships to repair, which he had made use of against the *Veneti*.

Several Provinces send Ambassadors.

In the mean time, several Provinces in *Britain* receiving Intelligence by the Merchants

* What Information *Cæsar* wanted, can't easily be conceived; for the *Britons* could be no Strangers to him, who had fought with some hundreds of them in *Gaul*; *Cassivellaun*, with his two Nephews having carried into *Gaul* some of *Britain* 21000 Men.

† *Feneti*, i. e. *Vennes* in *Armorica*.

of *Cæsar's* design'd Expedition, endeavour'd to divert him from it by sending Ambassadors to desire Peace, and offer Hostages. He received them with great Civility, and dismissed them with fair Promises, together with one *Comius* of *Attrebates**, a Man well known in *Britain*, with Instructions to go to as many States as he could, and persuade them to an Alliance with the *Romans*; and to let them know that *Cæsar* intended soon to visit them.

THEY were by no means pleased with this News, for they thought that what they had already done would have prevented the *Roman General's* pursuing that Resolution. So, whether *Comius* spoke to them too haughtily, or whether they had a Mind to shew they did not fear the *Romans*, this Ambassador was imprison'd and loaded with Irons.

B 2

VOLU-

* *Attrebates*, the People of *Artois*, but he is thought by some to be King of *Attrebatii*, *Berkshire*, in *Britain*, and went into *Gaul*, at first, to assist against *Cæsar*.

The HISTORY of

VOLUSENUS, having made what Discoveries he could of the Coasts, for he durst not venture out of his Ship, after five Days cruising return'd, and acquainted *Cæsar* with all he had observed. *Cæsar* leaving *Sulpicius Rufus* in *Gaul*, with a Garrison which he thought sufficient to guard the Ports, put to Sea with two Legions of Soldiers, and ordered his Horse into the further Port, there to embark and follow him; but they a little too slowly executed his Orders, he himself having arrived on the Coast of *Britain* the next Morning, which he found covered with Troops, that could easily with their Darts prevent his Landing. Here he thought it not at all proper to land, therefore determines to seek out for some other Place, where he may land his Army with less Danger, yet he lay at Anchor till three in the Afternoon, that the other Ships might come up to him. Upon their joining the Fleet, he calls together all his General Officers, and gives them his last Instructions concerning their Landing. After this, he sailed eight Miles Northward, in quest of a commodious Harbour, and brought his Ships to a plain and open Shore: supposed

Cæsar embarks.

posed to be somewhere about *Deal*, on the Coast of *Kent*, called in *British*, *Puych Meinlas*.

THE *Britons* perceiving his Design, immediately sent their Horse and Chariots, to oppose his Landing; and so vigorous was the Opposition, that he was in danger of being obliged to return to Sea, and leave the Enterprize unfinished; had not the Standard-Bearer of the tenth Legion, shewn them the Way, by leaping boldly into the Water, crying out, *follow me Fellow-Soldiers, unless you would forsake the Roman Eagle, and suffer it to fall into the Hands of the Enemy; for my part I am resolved to perform my Duty to the Common-Wealth, and my General*. Upon these Words, he leaped into the Water, and boldly advanced the Eagle towards the *Britons*. Whereupon the Soldiers, encouraging each other, to prevent Disgrace, and being reproach'd by their Officers, followed his Example, and began the Attack.

Lands in Britain with great Difficulty.

THE Encounter was very sharp on both Sides, and the *Romans* had probably been repulsed.

The Britons desire Peace.

repulsed, had not *Cæsar* ordered some arm'd Boats to ply about with Recruits, which made the *Britons* fall back a little. The *Romans* improving this Advantage, rushed forward with such Impetuosity, that they gain'd the Shore, and attacked the *Britons* on firm Ground, and made them at length retire. The *Britons*, upon this Defeat, sent Ambassadors to *Cæsar* to desire a Peace, which was immediately granted them, on Condition they sent him a certain number of Hostages; but in the mean time, *Cæsar's* Transports were surpris'd by a sudden Storm, in which they received considerable Damage, and obliged them to put back into the Ports of *Gaul*. And what added to this Misfortune, they had brought nothing with them for the Repair of their Vessels; neither were they furnished with Provisions, for their General all along intended to winter in *Gaul*.

They attack the seventh Legion.

THESE Things being known to the *Britons*, they resolv'd to draw together what Troops they could, in order to restrain the *Romans* from Foraging. And accordingly they furiously fell on the seventh Legion, which

which *Cæsar* had sent to get Provisions, and which would have been entirely cut off, had not the General come very fortunately to their Relief, and freed them from the Danger. In this Perplexity *Cæsar* lost no Time in repairing the Damages which he had suffered procuring such Provisions as he judged necessary, and fortifying his Camp.

Notwithstanding this, the *Britons* attacked *They attacked the Roman Camp.* him again, and fought with great Bravery

and Resolution; but being beaten back and defeated a third time, so disheartened them, that they immediately sent Ambassadors to *Cæsar* to desire a Peace. He readily consented to one, on Condition they would send him double the Number of Hostages, he formerly demanded, and required that they should be sent into *Gaul*, where he design'd to return as soon as possible; because the Season was far advanced, and the Autumnal Equinox drawing near, he did not think it safe to sail in the Winter in such crazy Vessels; therefore as soon as the

Wind stood fair for *Gaul*, which was about *Cæsar return to Gaul with little or no Advantage.* midnight, he put to Sea, and safely arrived

at the Port, where he embarked, with his whole Fleet.

Cæsar's second Expedition into Britain.

AFFAIRS being settled, *Cæsar* determin'd on a second Expedition of more Importance; and having assembled a Force proportion'd to his Design, went to Port *Iceius**, and embarked with five Legions, and two thousand Horse. With this numerous Fleet he steered to a Place on the *British* Coast, mark'd by him the Year before, and landed his Men without opposition. *Cæsar* leaving some Troops to guard his Camp, marched into the Country in quest of the Enemy. But he had not march'd above nine Miles, before he found the Enemy posted on the opposite Side of a River, commonly supposed to be *Stour*, to oppose his Passage.

The Britons worsted.

HOWEVER resolute they seem'd at first, they could not stand the furious Attack of the *Roman* Horse, which obliged them to give ground, and retire further back to a Wood, which was strongly fortified, and seem'd

* Port *Iceius*, i. e. *Calais*. Mr. Rowland, derives it from *Portheitba*, which is the utmost Passage, the *British* Words being only *Latimiz'd*.

seem'd to have been made use of in time of War among themselves. For all the Avenues to it were shut up, by a great many large Trees, that had been cut down, and laid across one another: And tho' to force this Intrenchment seem'd no easy matter, yet the Soldiers of the seventh Legion locking all their Shields together like a Roof over Head, and others casting up a Bank, took the Place without much loss of Blood, and obliged the *Britons* to seek their Safety in flight. But *Cæsar* would not suffer them to follow the pursuit, because he was not acquainted with the Country, and the greatest part of the Day being spent. This Accident determin'd the *Britons* to reinforce their Army, and to be under the Conduct of *Cassivellaunus*, in *British* *Kafwalbaun*, *Cassivellaunus chosen General of the British Forces.* King of the *Cassii*. This Prince had by Usurpation made himself Chief of the *Trinobantes*, (the Inhabitants of *Essex* with Part of *Hertfordshire*, a brave and stout People) and was often in War with his Neighbours. But upon the Arrival of the *Romans*, they struck up a Peace with him, and made him a Commander in Chief. Whilst *Cæsar's* *Attacks the Romans.* Army was on their March, *Cassivellaunus*,
with

The HISTORY of

with his Horse and Chariots, attacked them so vigorously, that great Bloodshed ensued on both Sides; and while they were busy in fortifying their Camp, a Party of *Britons* courageously stormed it, and put them into great Disorder. *Cæsar* seeing this, immediately sends two Cohorts to their Assistance, who being unacquainted with the *British* Way of Fighting, were soon put to Route. *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military Tribune, was slain in this Battle. As this was fought in sight of the Camp, it gave *Cæsar* an Opportunity to make the following Observation, that the *Britons* had great Advantage over the *Romans*, by their active way of Fighting, without being encumber'd with much Armour. That the *Roman* Horse were no less embarrassed than the Foot; for as the *Britons* often counterfeited a Retreat, the Horsemen detach'd to pursue them were soon cut in Pieces; so that in retiring and pursuing, there was the same Danger. Besides, their Custom was to engage in small Parties, which were relieved by other Recruits, and which proved no small Experience in the Art of War. The obscure and confused manner of *Cæsar's* relating this Transaction,

Transaction, is a manifest Proof, says a modern Historian, that the *Romans* were beaten; tho' he does not say it in plain Terms. Besides the Reason he gives for his Success are very weak, or if they are of any Weight or Consideration, how comes it that he did not meet with the same Difficulties in so many other Battles, wherein he pretends the *Britons* were wholly routed.

THE next Day the *Britons* posted themselves on some Hills in sight of the Camp. <sup>Another Con-
flict wherein
the Britons are
defeated.</sup> As they appeared to be not many in Number, it was thought they would not venture to engage a second time. But about Noon, when *Cæsar* had sent out three Legions, and all the Horse to forage, they were suddenly set upon on all Sides by the *Britons*, and vigorously attacked. But the Resistance made by the Legions giving the Roman General time to bring up the rest of his Army, a bloody Battle ensued, wherein the *Britons* were repulsed, and received a considerable Defeat. Upon which Overthrow most of the Auxiliaries left them and went to their own Countries, so that the
Britons

The HISTORY of

Britons never after appeared in the Field with any considerable Force.

AFTER this Defection, *Cassivellaunus* retired into his own Territories, keeping with him about four thousand Chariots; and imagining that *Cæsar* would advance farther into the Country, he fortify'd that Place of the River *Thames*, where it was fordable, with large and sharp Stakes * driven so deep, that some of them did not appear above the Water. Notwithstanding these Difficulties, *Cæsar* resolved to attack them, and ordered his Horse to enter the River, followed by the Legions, who wading up to the Neck, attacked the *Britons* with such Resolution, that they were obliged to retreat and leave the *Romans* a free Passage†.

*Cæsar passes
the Thames.*

However

* These Stakes are a little above *Walton* in *Surry*, and the Meadow opposite to them is called *Coway*. One of them was pulled out of the *Thames* not long since; they are of Oak, and tho' they have lain so long in Water, are yet as hard as Brazil, and black as Jet. At *Shepperton* they have several Knife Handles made of them.

† *Cæsar* is said to have made use of a Stratagem on this Occasion; namely, to cause an Elephant,

However *Cassivellaun* with only four thousand of his Chariots, galled and harrassed the Romans to such a degree, that *Cæsar* would undoubtedly have found it a difficult Task to have reduced him, had he not been joined by a new Ally, *Mandubratius*, in British, *Avardbuy vrás*, Prince of the *Erinobantes*, who out of Malice to *Cassivellaun*, who slew his Father *Immamuentius*, and forced him to fly to *Cæsar*, for Protection, prevailed on his Countrymen to assist the Romans. *Cæsar*, finding himself now at the Head of a powerful Army, resolved to attack the Town of *Cassivellaun*, supposed to be *Verulam*, or the present *St. Albans*, which was only defended by a kind of Pallisade, and a deep Ditch. Notwithstanding this, *Cæsar* says, it seemed a very strong Place, and therefore ordered it to be stormed on two Sides, with such Vigour, that the Britons, not able to withstand the Assault, withdrew by a Passage, which was open

Attacks Cassivellaun's Town.

phant, well fenced with Iron, with a wooden Tower on his Back, full of Men, to be forced into the River; the Sight of which monstrous Creature caused the Britons to retire from the opposite Shore.

open, but not without many of their Men killed, and taken, and leaving behind them great plenty of Provisions.

*Four Kentish
Kings attack
the Roman
Camp.*

*Cassivellaun
desires Peace.*

WHILST the War was thus carried on in these Parts, the Inhabitants of *Kent*, gathered their Forces together with Design to cut off all the *Romans* left on the Coast, for the Security of their Ships. As soon as they were ready they marched under the Command of four petty Kings, namely, *Cingetorix*, *Carvilius*, *Taximagulus*, and *Segonax*, and furiously stormed the *Roman* Camp, but after an obstinate and bloody Battle they were repulsed, and *Cingetorix* taken Prisoner. *Cassivellaun*, after several unsuccessful Attempts, and despairing to break thro' the Difficulties that surrounded him, sent *Comius* of *Arras*, to treat of Peace, which upon the Account of his own Valour, and the Season far advanc'd, was soon obtained for *Cæsar* designing to winter in *Gaul*, demands Hostages, and appoints an Annual Tribute to be paid to the *Romans*, and Orders *Cassivellaun* not to molest *Mandubratius*. Having received the Hostages, he march'd his Army back to the Sea Shore, and embarked

embarked, and safely arrived with his whole Army in *Gaul*.

THIS is the Account given by that Great General, of his two famous Expeditions in-
 to *Britain*. And here we may observe, that for all the great Advantages he gained over the *Britons*, by a long Tract of Successes, according to his own Account; yet his sudden Departure in the Night, which immediately followed the Battle; and besides, leaving the Island without any Troops in it, or fortifying any one Place, has made some suspect that he was beaten by the *Britons*. *Lucan*, indeed, tells us in plain Terms as much, saying, *Territa quæstis offendit terga Britannis*. *Dion Cassius* affirms, that the *Britons* intirely routed the Roman Infantry, and another time the Cavalry. *Tacitus*, and several other Authors, intimate, that the *Britons* were not looked upon as a conquer'd Nation, and that *Cæsar* only shew'd the *Romans*, the Way to *Britain*; whence it is evident that his Conquests in this Island, were not so many and frequent, nor the Liberties of the *Britons* so easily given up, as he represents them in his *Commentaries*.

*Remarks on
Cæsar's Ac-
count.*

Now

The HISTORY of

Now in order to conceive rightly of this great Transaction, it may be necessary to give the Reader a short Account of it from *Virunnius*, that he may not only have a perfect Comprehension of the Affairs of the *Britons*, during this space of Time; but also may be able to judge in some measure, of the Credit due to each. That Author tells us, that *Cæsar* having conquered *Gaul*, came to the Shore of *Rutem*, from whence he had a Prospect of *Britain*: He then enquired of those about him what Country it was, and what People inhabited it; which he was no sooner informed of, than he said, “ Truly, we *Romans*, and the *Britons*, have
 “ sprung from the same Original, since
 “ both are descended from the *Trojan* Race.
 “ But unless I am very much deceived, they
 “ are greatly degenerated from us, and quite
 “ ignorant in the Art of War, being placed
 “ far distant from the World. They may
 “ be easily brought to pay Tribute, and
 “ submit themselves to the Common-
 “ Wealth. But before the *Romans* offer to
 “ make War upon them, we must send an
 “ Ambassador to demand of them to pay
 “ Tribute, as other Nations do; lest we
 “ should

" should debase the Dignity of our An-
 " cestors, by shedding the Blood of our
 " Kinsmen." All which he ordered to be
 communicated by Letters to *Cassivellaun*;
 who, full of Rage and Resentment returned
 the following Answer, " We are greatly
 " surpriz'd, *Cæsar*, at the Avarice of the
 " *Romans*, who neither can leave us, whom
 " the Dangers of the Ocean have placed as
 " it were out of the World, unmolested,
 " or know with what to content them-
 " selves; but they must insolently covet our
 " Estates, which we have hitherto enjoy'd
 " undisturb'd: Nor will this truly satisfy,
 " unless we part with our ancient Liberty,
 " and become Slaves: Your Request there-
 " fore, *Cæsar*, is shameful, since the *Bri-*
 " *tons* are originally from the same Stock
 " with the *Romans*, which ought to attach
 " us to each other the more firmly. That
 " was what you should have demanded of
 " us, and not Slavery: Because we have
 " learned to grant our Friendship, but ne-
 " ver to bear the Yoke of Bondage. And
 " so much have we been accustomed to
 " Liberty, that we know not, what it is
 " to submit to Slavery. And if even the
 Vol. I. C Gods

“ Gods themselves should attempt to deprive us of our Liberty, we would with all our Might endeavour to maintain it. Be assured then, *Cæsar*, that we are ready to Fight both for that, and our Kingdom, if, as you threaten, you should attempt to invade our Island.’

CÆSAR receiving this Answer, got ready his Fleet, and with the first fair Wind, set sail, and arrived with his Army at the Mouth of the River *Tbames*. *Cassivellaun*, however, marched with all his Forces to oppose his Landing, and coming to the Town of *Dorobellum*; he consulted with his Nobility how to stave off the Enemy. At this Assembly were present *Belinus*, General of his Army, by whose Counsel the whole Kingdom was governed; likewise his two Nephews *Androgeus* * Duke of *Trinovantum*, and *Tenuantius* †, Duke of *Cornwal*, together with three petty Kings, viz. *Cridious*, King of *Albania*, *Guertbaeth* of *Venedotia*, and *Brotchmael* of *Demetia*, who

* *Androgeus*, called by *Cæsar*, *Mandubratius*.

† *Tenuantius*, call'd *Immanuentius*.

who being all eager to engage the Enemy, he advised them to march directly to *Cæsar's* Camp, and endeavour, if it were possible, to drive him out of the Country, before he could take any City, or Town; because, if he should possess himself of any fortified Place, it would then be the more difficult to expel him: In Consequence of which Advice they immediately advanced towards the Shore, where *Cæsar* had incamped. Accordingly the two Armies having joined Battle, Darts and Javelins were employed, and so great Slaughter ensued, that the Ground was steeped with the Blood of the Slain.

In the mean time, *Nennius* and *Androgeus*, with the Citizens of *Canterbury*, and *Trinovantum*, whom they commanded, had the Fortune to engage with the very Troop where the General himself was present: And at the first Attack, the *Britons* falling upon them in a close Body, had like to put the General's Cohort to the Route; which gave *Nennius* an Opportunity of engaging with *Cæsar*. *Nennius* therefore furiously rushed upon him, and was glad that he could but

give so much as one Blow to so Great a Man, which *Cæsar* perceiving, stretched out his Shield to receive his Blow, and with all his Might returned it him on his Helmet with his drawn Sword; which he lifted up again, in order to double his Blow and make it fatal; but *Nennius* appriz'd of the Danger, carefully prevented him with his Shield, into which *Cæsar's* Sword sliding with great Force from the Helmet, came to be so hard fastened, that upon the breaking in of the Troops, a stop was put to the Encounter, the General not being able to draw it out again. *Nennius*, having thus got *Cæsar's* Sword, threw away his own, fell upon the Enemy with fresh Vigour, and did great Execution; for whoever he struck with it, he either cut off his Head, or left him mortally wounded. While he was thus exerting himself, he was met by *Labienus* a Tribune, whom he killed the very first Onset. At length, the Day being far spent, the *Britons* poured in so fast, and made such a brisk Charge, that by the Aiding of the Gods, they obtained the Victory, and obliged *Cæsar*, with the shatter'd Remains of his Army to betake themselves

to their Ships, overjoy'd that they had the Sea for their Camp. And upon his Companions advising him, to drop his Design of pursuing the War, he acquiesced in their Advice, and returned back to *Gaul*.

THE first thing *Cassivellaun* took care of after the Battle was to offer up Thanks to the Deities, and next to Reward the Companions of his Victory according as they had signalized themselves against the Enemy. But on the other hand, he was very much concerned for his Brother *Nennius*, who lay mortally wounded, and past all hopes of Recovery. For the Wound that *Cæsar* gave him in the abovementioned Engagement, proved incurable; whereupon he died fifteen Days after the Battle, and was buried in the City of the *Trinovantes*, by the North Gate. His Funeral was performed with great Pomp and Solemnity; and *Cæsar*'s Sword was put in the Tomb with him, which he kept since his Combat with *Cæsar*. The Sword was usually called *Crocea Mors*, i. e. Yellow Death, because those that were wounded with it, seldom got well away. After two Years were

C 3

expired,

The HISTORY of

expired, *Cæsar* makes Preparations to cross the Sea again, and revenge himself on *Cassivellaun*, who being informed of his Design, every where fortified his Cities, repaired all Breaches in the Walls, planted Garrisons at all the Ports, and in the River *Thames* sharp pointed Stakes under the Surface of the Water, for *Cæsar* to split his Ships upon. Then having drawn together his Forces took up his Quarters near the Sea Coasts, where he staid in Expectation of the Arrival of the Enemy. *Cæsar*, after he had made the necessary Preparations, embarked with a numerous Army, desirous to be revenged of a Nation that defeated him, and which he accordingly had done, if he could but have brought his Fleet safe to Land; but this he was not able to do. For in sailing up the River *Thames*, he was in great danger of losing all his Ships, by striking against the Stakes and Grapples, which so pierced them thorough, that many Vessels sunk into the River, and some Thousands of the Men drowned. *Cæsar*, apprehensive of the Danger he was in, employ'd all his Force to shift his Sails, and hastened to return to Land; and likewise

tho

those that remained, after a very narrow Escape got to Land with him. *Cassivellaun*, who was a Spectator of the Dangers *Cæsar* was exposed to, seem'd highly delighted with the Sight of the drowned Persons, but grieved that any found Means to save themselves. Hereupon, *Cassivellaun*, who well knew how to take Advantage of this Disaster, having given the Signal to his Soldiers, attacked the *Romans*; the Shock of which they bravely withstood, notwithstanding the Fatigue they had undergone in the River; and having nothing to trust to but their own Courage, they made no small Slaughter; yet not without suffering a greater themselves, than what they were able to give. For having sustained a great Loss in the River, their Number were considerably diminish'd: Whereas the *Britons* were hourly receiving fresh Supplies, which enabled them to gain a compleat Victory. *Cæsar*, over-power'd by Numbers, was forced to quit his Ground, and retire with his small Army to his Ships. Pleased with this Retreat, he set sail, and as the Wind then stood fair, he soon reach'd the Shore of the *Morini*.

THIS Second Victory filled *Cassivellaun* with Joy; whereupon he assembled all the Nobility of *Britain* with their Wives to the City of *Trinovantum*, in order to offer solemn Sacrifices to the Gods, who had given them the Victory over so renown'd a General. Upon their Arrival great Preparations were made, and the Day to be solemnized with Victims and Sacrifices. Accordingly they offered eleven thousand Cows, and a hundred thousand Sheep, and also Fowls of several Kinds innumerable, besides thirty thousand wild Beasts of various Kinds.

AFTER they had performed these solemn Rites to their Deities, they feasted themselves with the Remainder, as usual, and spent the remaining Part of the Day, and the following Night in several Games and Sports. During these Diversions, it happen'd that two Noble Youths, whereof one was Nephew to the King, the other to Duke *Androgeus*, wrestled together, and as some Dispute arose between them about the Victory, *Evelinus*, *Androgeus's* Nephew, snatching

snatching up his Sword, cut off *Hirelglas's* Head. This Action greatly alarmed the Court, and put it into the utmost Consternation, and provoked *Cassivellaun* so highly, that he commanded *Evelinus* to be brought before him, that he might receive such Sentence as the Nobility should pass, and that *Hirelglas's* Death might be fully revenged upon him, if he was wrongfully Slain. *Androgeus* suspecting the King's Design, made Answer, that he had a Court of his own, and that whatever was laid to his Men's Charge, ought to be determined there. Wherefore if he determined to demand Justice of *Evelinus*, he may have it at *Trinovantum*, according to the Constitution of our Ancestors. *Cassivellaun* finding he could not attain his Ends, determined at all Adventures to be revenged on *Androgeus*, and even threatened to waste his Territories with Fire and Sword, if he did not comply with his Demands. *Androgeus* grievously resented this, and dropp'd all Compliance with him; which so incensed *Cassivellaun*, that he fell at once upon his Territories, and committed great Devastations; neither could he be prevailed upon to depart, and lay
aside

The HISTORY of

afide his Resentment by all the Intreaties of his Kindred and Friends. *Androgeus* finding he could not be prevailed upon by fair Means, at length resolved to implore the Assistance of *Cæsar*, and wrote a Letter to him in the following manner.

ANDROGEUS Duke of *Trinovantum* to *Caius Julius Cæsar*; after Wishes of Destruction, now wishes Welfare. “ It grieves me, that I have hitherto acted against you, when you made War on the King. If I had not accompanied *Cassivellaun* in that Expedition, you had certainly vanquished him; but now since his Victory, he is so elated with Success, that he does all he can to drive me out of his Coasts; me, who I may safely say, procured him that Victory. Is my good Turn then thus requited? I have fix’d him in an Inheritance; and he endeavours to disinherit me. I have twice restored him to the Kingdom, and he seeks to destroy me. All which I perform’d by fighting against you. I call the Deities to witness, I have not deserved his Anger, unless I may be said to deserve it, because

“ because I refused to deliver up my Ne-
“ phew, whom he would have wrongfully
“ condemn’d to die. That you may make
“ a right Judgment of this Matter, take
“ this particular Account of the Affair. It
“ fell out that for Joy of the Victory, we
“ performed solemn Ceremonies, in ho-
“ nour of our Tutelary Gods, which as soon
“ as finished, our Youths diverted them-
“ selves with Games. Among the rest, two
“ of our Nephews, after the Example of
“ others, entered the Ring; whereupon my
“ Nephew came off victorious, which so
“ provoked the other, that he fell to Re-
“ proaches, and was just going to strike
“ him, had he not escap’d the Blow, by
“ catching him by the Hand that held the
“ Sword, strove to wrest it from him. In
“ this Struggle the King’s Nephew hap-
“ pened to fall on the Point of the Sword,
“ and was instantly killed. Upon this the
“ King intended to punish my Nephew
“ with severity; and because I endeavour’d
“ to prevent it, he entered my Territories,
“ and ravaged them on all Sides.

“ WHERE-

“ WHEREFORE I implore your Pro-
 “ tection, and beg that you would supply
 “ me with a sufficient Force to make head
 “ against him, which will not only be a
 “ Means to restore me to my Dignity,
 “ but also for you to get Possession of *Brit-*
 “ *tain*. Make no doubt of this Matter;
 “ neither suspect any Treachery: But be
 “ mov’d by those Principles which gene-
 “ rally obtain. Let our past Enmities be
 “ changed into inseparable Friendship,
 “ and after Defeat be more bent upon
 “ Victory.”

HEREUPON, *Cæsar* not knowing what
 Answer to return, summoned a Council of
 his faithful Friends, to consider with them
 what Course to take. Some advised him to
 demand Hostages for his Security before he
 passed over into *Britain*. Accordingly *An-*
drogeus readily sent his Son *Scava*, (who
 afterwards became famous in military Af-
 fairs under so great a Master as *Cæsar*) and
 thirty young Noblemen nearly related to
 him. Hostages being given, *Cæsar*, now
 void of distrust, reassembles his Forces, and
 with

with the first fair Wind set sail, and reach'd the Port of *Rutupi*. In the mean time *Cassivellaun*, had begun to besiege *Trinovantum*, and laid waste all the Provincial Villages. But when he found *Cæsar* was landed, he rais'd the Siege, and made what haste he possibly could to meet him, therefore as he entered a Valley near *Dorobernia*, he saw the Roman Army, pitching their Camp: For *Androgeus* had conducted them to this Place, in order to make a secret and sudden attack on the City. The Romans perceiving the Britons advancing towards them with the utmost Expedition, quickly ran to their Arms, and assembled themselves in several Troops and Parties. But *Androgeus*, with five thousand Men, lay in Ambush in a neighbouring Wood, to be ready to assist *Cæsar*, and sally'd out suddenly on *Cassivellaun* and his Men.

BOTH Armies being now come to close Engagement, great Slaughter ensued, and the Wounded, as *Virunnius* says, fell down like Leaves in Autumn. While they were thus engaged, and many had fallen on both Sides, *Androgeus* sallies out of the Woods,
and

and falls unexpectedly on the Rear of *Cassivelaun's* Army, on which the Advantage of the Battle wholly depended; so that partly by the Attack of the *Romans*, and partly by the sudden Sally of their own Countrymen, they were not able to stand the Shock, but obliged with the shatter'd Remains of their Army to quit the Field, and retire to a rocky Mountain, on the Top of which was a thick hazel Coppice. As soon as they arrived at the Top of the Hill, he made a Stand against them, and bravely defended himself, and killed the pursuing Enemy. For the *Roman* Forces with those of *Androgeus*, followed them close to disperse the flying Troops, and tho' forced to climb, yet made many Attacks, but without Success. For the Rockiness of the Mountain, and its great Eminence was a sort of a Fortification to the *Britons*, and gave them great Advantage over the Enemy; so that they made a great Slaughter. Notwithstanding these Disadvantages *Cæsar* besieged the Mountain that whole Night, which had now overtaken them, and blocked up all the Avenues to it, resolving to reduce the King by Famine, since he could not do it
by

by force of Arms. O, the unparalleled Bravery of the *Britons* in those Days, that could a second time defeat the Conqueror of the World! Whom all the World could not withstand! him did they, even when forced to quit the Field, withstand! being ready to spill the last Drop of their Blood for the Defence of their Country, and Liberty. Hence, *Lucan*, to their Glory, says of *Cæsar*. *Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis.*

WITH Pride he fought the *Britons*, but when found, dreaded their Force, and fled the hostile Ground. And now two Days being elapsed, *Cassivellaun* began to want Provisions, and fearing that Famine would force him to surrender himself Prisoner to *Cæsar*, sent Orders to *Androgeus* to treat of Peace with *Julius*, lest the Honour of the Nation should be stained by his being made a Captive. He at the same time represented to him, that he did not deserve such Treatment, and tho' he had caused him some Uneasiness, yet it ought not to be judged worthy of Death. As soon as this Message was delivered to *Androgeus*,
he

he made Answer; " That Prince deserves
 " not to be loved, who in War is mild as
 " a Lamb, in Peace cruel as a Lion. O,
 " strange! ye Gods of Heaven and Earth,
 " that he, who a little before 'was Com-
 " mander, should now become suppliant!
 " That he should desire to be reconciled
 " to *Cæsar*, of whom *Cæsar* himself had
 " a little before desired Peace. He ought
 " first to have well considered this, that the
 " Victory is not his who triumphs, but
 " theirs who spill their Blood in fighting
 " for him. Notwithstanding I will endea-
 " vour all I can, to procure him Peace,
 " because the Injury he has done me, is
 " sufficiently revenged upon him, since he
 " implores my Clemency." Hereupon he
 immediately went to *Cæsar*, and in the
 posture of a Suppliant, intreated him to par-
 don *Cassivellaun*, since his Revenge was now
 fully gratified; and he willing to pay Tri-
 bute to the *Roman* State. To all this *Cæ-*
jar answered not a Word: Upon which *An-*
drogeus, said again; " My Agreement with
 " you, *Cæsar*, was only to attempt the Re-
 " duction of *Britain*, by the Submission of
 " *Cassivellaun*. The King is now subdued,
 and

"and *Britain*, by my Assistance become
 "Subject to you. God forbid that my
 "Sovereign, who sues to me for Peace,
 "should by my means be bound in Chains.
 "It is no easy matter, while I am living,
 "to destroy *Cassivellaun*, to whom I shall
 "not blush to give my Assistance, unless
 "you will comply with my Advice."

CÆSAR, dreading the Displeasure of
Androgeus, resolved from that Moment to
 follow his Advice, and to be reconciled to
Cassivellaun. With this View he entered in-
 to a Treaty with the King, by virtue where-
 of, *Cassivellaun* was to pay an annual Tri-
 bute of three thousand Pound of Silver.
 After this, they had an Interview, in which,
 after mutual Presents, and Promises of last-
 ing Friendship, *Cæsar* spent the Winter in
Britain, and early in the Spring crossed
 over into *Gaul*.

OUR Author, says, that *Cæsar* admired
Cassivellaun's high Stature and austere Coun-
 tenance. After the Expiration of seven
 Years, *Cassivellaun* died, and was buried at
Tork. He was succeeded by *Tenuantius*,

The HISTORY of

or *Theomantius*, Duke of *Cornwal*, and Brother of *Androgeus*; for *Androgeus* attended *Cæsar* to *Rome*. *Tenuantius* therefore being crowned, governed the Kingdom with Diligence. He was an excellent Soldier; and in administring Justice, very strict and exact.

In his Time
was born our
Lord and Sa-
viour Jesus
Christ.

ANDROGEUS was succeeded in the Government, by *Cunobelinus* or *Kymbelinus*, King of the *Trinovantes*, in *British Kynvelin*, his Son, an experienced Soldier; and having had his Education in *Rome*, kept the *Britons* in Peace, and by his Interest, and paying their Tribute, they enjoyed their own Laws. He was the first that stamp'd the *British* Coins after the *Roman* manner. His Son *Adminius* having incurred his Father's Displeasure, fled with a small Retinue to the Emperor *Caligula*.

Now to reassume the Thread of the History. At the Instigation of one of these Fugitives, named *Bericus*, the Emperor *Claudius*, made War upon the *Britons*; he often represented to the Emperor the Conquest of that Island, as an Enterprize

prize of no great Difficulty, by the Description he gave of it, and the favourable Opportunity of a discontented Faction amongst themselves; he insinuated to him that he would meet with little or no Resistance. At his Persuasion, *Claudius* sent

Orders to *Plautius* to enter on the Expedition as soon as possible; but this Order was not relished by the Soldiers, who in a

*Plautius is sent
with an Army
into Britain.
An. D. 43.*

Mutiny declared, that they would not make War beyond the End of the World; for so they looked on this Island to lie. The Emperor being informed of this Mutiny, sent *Narcissus* his Freedman to appease it. After this they march'd to the Sea-side, and set sail from three several Ports, lest their Landing should in any one Place be opposed. But this Precaution proved useless; for the *Britons* being informed of the Mutiny in the *Roman* Army, and their unwillingness to enter upon the Expedition, had been negligent in providing against them; so that the *Roman* General set all his Troops on Shore, without any Opposition. He wish'd he could have fought the *Britons* on his Landing; but they had determined to avoid a Battle if possible, and in several

Parties to keep behind their Moores, or on their Hills; intending thereby to waste Time, and to divert *Plautius* from his Design, hoping he would return again, as *Julius Cæsar* did, without effecting any thing. This Resolution did not a little embarrass the *Roman* General, who was forced to go in quest of Enemies dispersed in several Places: But notwithstanding these Difficulties, he found Means, with the Assistance of the fugitive *Britons*, to surprize *Togodumnus* * and after him *Caractacus*, the Sons of *Cunobelinus*, whom they defeated. The *Britons*, in pursuance of their former Resolution, retired beyond a River, where they encamped in a negligent and secure manner, not imagining the *Romans* could pass it without a Bridge.

*He surprizes
and Defeats
the two British
Princes, one
after another.*

BUT *Plautius*, having in his Army some *German* Soldiers, who were used to swim, armed

* *Togodumnus*, third Son of *Cunobelinus*, assumed the Government in his Brother's Absence, and with great Intrepidity, prosecuted his Country's Quarrel against the *Romans*, and was at last killed at the Head of his Troops in an Engagement with *Vespatian*.

armed as they were, the strongest Current; these, he ordered to cross the River, which so amazed the *Britons*, that they quitted their Post, and retired at a further Distance. The *Roman* General laying hold on this Advantage, immediately sent the famous *Vespasian*, and his Brother *Sabinus*, with a considerable Body of Troops, which did great Execution, and obliged them to retreat; but the *Britons*, not yet discouraged, engaged them so vigorously the very next Day, that the *Romans* were put into Disorder, and their Commander very narrowly escaped being taken; but the Scene soon changed; for *Geta* having the good Fortune to escape, recovers himself again, and heads his Troops, charging the *Britons* so valiantly, who thought themselves sure of Victory, that after an obstinate Engagement, he forced them at last to retreat as far as the River *Thames*:

The Britons attack the Romans, and put them in great Disorder, but forced to retreat at last.

BUT *Plautius*, not thinking it safe to march farther up the Country, sent for *Claudius*, as he was ordered, if any thing should happen more than ordinary.

Claudius arrives, and defeats the Britons.

FOR this Expedition great Preparations were made, a great number of Legions drawn together, and ready to march on the first Notice. Therefore, as soon as the Emperor had received the Express, he left *Rome*, and embarking at *Ostium*, sailed to *Mar-seilles*, from thence passing by Land to *Gessariacum*, now *Bologne*, and from that Place, set sail for *Britain*, put himself at the Head of his Army, which lay encamped on the Banks of the *Thames*. With these he passed the River, defeated the *Britons*, and made himself Master of several strong Holds; among the rest, that of *Camulodunum*, now *Malden* in *Essex*, where stood the Royal Seat of *Cunobelinus*, whose Coins have been found here, with these Inscriptions, *Cuno*, on one Side, and *Camu*, on the other.

He returns to Rome.

AFTER this successful Expedition, *Claudius* treating the Inhabitants with Kindness and Generosity, induced many to submit. Then leaving *Plautius*, Governor of the conquered Provinces, and making *Camulodunum* a Roman Colony, sets out for *Rome*.

PLAU-

PLAUTIUS, according to the Instruc- Plautius continues the War.
 tions that had been left him, carried on the A. D. 45.
 Conquests which the Emperor had begun,
 being joined by that great Commander
Vespasian, who fought several Battles with
 the *Britons*; some say thirty, partly under
Plautius, and partly under *Claudius* him-
 self. In one of which he was in danger of A. D. 45
 being taken, had not his Son *Titus*, va-
 liantly rescued him. Two powerful Na-
 tions he subdued, took above twenty strong
 Towns, and reduced the *Isle of Wight*. As
 all this was performed under the Command
 of *Plautius*, who was the chief General, it Returns to Rome.
 got him great Honour, and he was received
 at *Rome* with particular Marks of Distinc-
 tion.

THE *British* Chronicle informs us, that
Claudius's Expedition into *Britain* was
 chiefly owing to *Guiderius's*, or *Gwydyr*,
 eldest Son and Successor of *Cunobelinus*, re-
 fusing Payment of the Tribute, which his
 Father had agreed to send annually into
Rome, because the *Romans* would not send

back the Fugitives which had fled out of *Britain* with *Adminius*. The Person *Claudius* employed to take care of the War, was called *Lelius Hamo*, who on his Arrival at the City of *Portchester*, antiently a famous Haven near *Portsmouth*, blocked up both the City and Port. Upon this Beginning of Hostilities, *Gwyderius* assembled all his Troops, and march'd to give them battle, in which *Gwyderius* distinguished himself in a very particular manner, killing many with his own Hand. While *Claudius* was on the Point of making a Retreat to his Ships, and his whole Army of taking to Flight, the subtle *Hamo* be-thought himself of a Stratagem, which had like to have made Victory incline to his Side. When he saw the *Romans* hard pressed by the *Britons*, he all on a sudden threw aside his own Armour, and assumed that of a *Britain*, whom he had slain. Then joining their Army, he encouraged the *Britons* to press on with Vigour, promising them speedy Victory; for he could speak their Language as a Native, having been brought up among the *British* Hos-
tages

tages at *Rome*. By this Artifice he gradually penetrated into the very Line, where the King had taken his Post, and finding a favourable Opportunity, he basely stabb'd him. Having done this Villany, he slipped away with the News to his own Army. *Arviragus* no sooner perceived his Brother killed, than he instantly stripp'd and put on his Brother's Dress, and under his Form, animated the *Britons* to stand their Ground, who, not knowing what had happen'd to the King, attacked the *Romans* with new Vigour; and at length obliged them to betake themselves to flight. They separated and took different Routs, *Claudius* flying with Part of his Army towards their Fleet, and *Hamo* into the Woods, whither *Arviragus* pursued him, imagining that *Claudius* had taken the same Rout.

HAMO seeing himself closely pursued, made what haste he could towards the Sea Coast, where *Arviragus* at last came up with him, just as he endeavour'd to get aboard, some Merchant Ships riding at Anchor

Anchor in the Port, and there falling upon him, soon killed him, which Place ever after was called by the Britons *Porth Hamo*, now *Southampton*.

IN the mean time *Claudius* had assembled the scattered Remains of his Forces, and with them reduced the City called *Kaerperis*, now *Portchester*. This so revived their Hopes and Courage, that they immediately march'd from thence to *Caerwynt*, now *Winchester*, in order to besiege that City, which he was informed *Arviragus* had a little before entered. *Claudius* having brought his Engines near the Walls, began to batter them without Intermission. When *Arviragus* had reflected on the Danger to which he exposed himself and his Troops, he summoned them together, and told them he was determin'd to make a general Sally, and venture an Engagement with the Enemy. But while he was taking proper Measures for it, he received a Message from *Claudius* (who had experienced the King's Valour, and was not a little in doubt

doubt of Success) with Offers of Peace. He proposed, that on Condition he would submit and pay Tribute, he should have his Daughter *Gwenissa* in Marriage. On the Receipt of this Message, *Arviragus* called a Council, in which the Nobility were of Opinion, that he ought to accept of the Conditions, telling him that it was no Disgrace to be subject to the *Roman* Power, which extended over the whole World. By these, and the like Arguments, he was at last prevailed upon to follow their Advice, and accordingly made his Submission to *Claudius*, which was no sooner done but he sent to *Rome* for his Daughter *Gwenissa*, and being desirous to undertake some Enterprize before his Return to *Rome*, he set out for the *Orcades*, and with the Assistance of *Arviragus* brought all those Islands under his Subjection. Early in the Spring, the Deputies that were sent for *Claudius's* Daughter set out on their Return to *Britain*, where they were no sooner arrived than they presented her to her Father.

As this Princess was very beautiful, *Arviragus* long'd to be the lawful Proprietor of her Charms. Accordingly the Nuptials were immediately celebrated with great Magnificence. The King was now so taken up with his new Queen, that he had not the least Taste of Delight, but in the Enjoyment of his charming Princess.

THE Queen having found the great Secret of his Passion, gained so great an Ascendant over his Affections that he valued nothing but her, and to shew the high Esteem he had for her, he solicited *Claudius* to build a City upon that Spot of Ground where their Nuptials were solemnized, to perpetuate the Memory of it. *Claudius* readily consented, and accordingly gave immediate Orders for the building of a City, which after his Name was called *Caeroglou*, i. e. *Claudio cestria*, now *Gloucester* *. The City being finished, and

* Some are of Opinion that it derived its Name from Duke *Gloius*, others one *Glouc* great Grandfather to *Vortiger*.

and the Island enjoying profound Tranquility, *Claudius* determin'd to return to *Rome*, committing to the Care of *Arviragus* the Government of the provincial Islands.

AFTER the Departure of *Claudius*, *Arviragus* began to signalize his Prudence and Courage, in re-establishing the Affairs of the Kingdom, and rebuilding Cities and Towns. He administred Justice with so great Impartiality, that he had not only Magistrates, but Kings in great Awe, which puff'd him up, that he began to be dissatisfied with the *Roman* Power, and assume to himself the sole Authority in all Matters. As soon as *Claudius* heard this, he sent *Vespasian* with Orders either to gain over *Arviragus* by fair means, or else by Force compel him to submit to the *Roman* State. *Vespasian*, on his Arrival at the Port of *Rutupi*, found *Arviragus* with a great Army ready to oppose his landing. Upon which he determin'd to look out for some other Place, and accordingly he set sail, and came to an Anchor at the Shore of *Totness*.
He

He was no sooner landed, but he march'd directly to besiege *Caer-bwylcoel* now *Exeter*, to the Relief whereof came *Arviragus*, whereupon an Engagement ensued, wherein Victory held the Balance so even, that when Night came, neither could boast of the least Advantage.

BOTH Sides prepared to renew the Fight the next Morning, but Matters were accommodated by the Mediation of Queen *Gwenissa*. This Accommodation restored Tranquility to the Country, and the Armies were sent over into *Ireland*. From this time *Arviragus* began to treat the Senate in a quite different manner from what he had done formerly, which procured him profound Peace. He enacted several wholesome Laws, and caused those of his Ancestors to be enforced. He promoted Virtue and amply rewarded it; so that his Fame was diffused throughout all *Europe*. He far excelled in the Opinion of the *Romans*, all the Kings of his Time, and he was both feared and esteemed by them. Hence
the

the Poet *Juvenal* reports how a certain blind Man, speaking of a Turbet that was caught, said.

Regem aliquem capies aut de Temone Britanno decidet Arviragus.

Englished by Mr. *Thompson* thus.

*Arviragus shall from his Chariot fall
Or thee his Lord some Captive King shall call.*

WE are told, this Prince was fierce and terrible in Battle, but mild after it. His Behaviour was kind and generous. He was of a middle stature, with blackish Hair. After a glorious Reign of thirty-eight Years, he died, and was buried at *Gloucester*, in a certain Temple which he had built, and dedicated to the Honour of *Claudius*. He was called by the Britons *Gwoyryd Adar Weinidawc*, i. e. Augurer or Diviner, by the flight of Birds. The Scotch Writers tell us, that *Arviragus* having beheld a Roman Lady named *Genissa*,

nissa, was so struck with her Beauty, that he not only put away his lawful Wife *Woda*, Sister to *Caractatus* King of Scotland, but likewise put her in Prison, and married *Genissa*. Upon which, *Woda* complain'd to the Nobility, and begg'd them to revenge the Injury done to her; who accordingly took up Arms, broke open the Prison, and carried her to *Wales*. While they were there, they took the Freedom to represent to him, how unjust and barbarous it was to imprison his lawful Wife, and wantonly marry another, how contemptible it would render him to the whole World. *Arviragus* took no manner of Notice of this Message, but threatened to punish them severely for rebelling against the *Roman* Power. But the Nobility were so far from being terrified at his Menaces, that they immediately sent to the Lords of *Carlisle*, *Kendal*, and *Durham*, to come and join them, and accordingly they march'd to *Corinium*, now *Sbrewsbury*; where they held a Consultation. Having got Men enough together to make a small Army, they went to join *Caractatus*, who

was

was marching to meet them with a great Army of *Scots* and *Picts*. They soon came to an Engagement, in which the King with the *Roman* General were defeated; and having obliged *Arviragus* to demand a Peace, he obtained it upon the easy Terms, of taking to him his Wife *Woda*, by whom he had a Son and two Daughters.

PLAUTIUS, was succeeded by *Ostorius* *Ostorius sent into Britain.* *Scapula*, who found Affairs in great Disorder, by the frequent Incurfions of the *Britons*, and the more violent because they did not expect that the new General, unacquainted with his Troops, and the Season far advanced, would in haste oppose them. But *Ostorius*, who was an Officer of great Experience, being sensible that the first Enterprize would either breed Fear or Contempt, took with him such Cohorts as were next at hand, fell unexpectedly upon the unwary *Britons*, with great Slaughter, and pursued such as were scattered so close, as to hinder them from uniting into one

one Body. Afterwards, considering that a Peace made by Force was always to be suspected, he forthwith disarmed those whom he mistrusted, and secured the two Rivers, *Severn* and *Avon*, by placing several Garrisons upon them.

The Britons unite against Ostorius and fought a bloody Battle.

THIS Restraint was highly resented by the *Iceni**, a powerful People, and not yet wasted with War, who refusing all Submission, resolved to oppose the Governor's Design, in which they were followed by several of their Neighbours, and encamping upon advantageous Ground, engaged the Enemy. After a very sharp Engagement, they were defeated, but with the greater Bloodshed, because they had no Hopes, but from Victory.

AFTER

* *Iceni*, i. e. the Inhabitants of the present Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Cambridge* and *Huntingdon*. Mr. Rowland observes, that *Cyn* or *Kyn* signifies in *British*, first or foremost, hence *Kynta*, or *Kent*.

AFTER this Battle, *Ostorius* led his Army against the *Cangi* †, laying waste their Territories. He had advanced as far as the *Irish* Sea, when he received Advice, that the *Brigantes* * were in Arms. This obliged him to turn his Arms towards the North : for he was resolved not to attempt any thing farther, before he had well secured what was already gained. But the *Silures* || were a Nation, the most untractable of any, and all to a Man for War; relying upon their own Courage, and the Valour and Conduct of their General, *Caractacus* ^{*Caractacus opposes the Romans.*}, who had given many Proofs of his daring and bold Adventures, and raised his Reputation above all the other *British* Commanders. As he was better acquainted with the Country than the *Romans*,

† The Inhabitants of the present Counties of *Salop* and *Chefbire*. Some think it signifies the ancient City called *Diganwy*, near *Conway*.

* The Inhabitants of *Lancashire*, *Yorkshire*, *Durham*, *Westmoreland* and *Cumberland*.

|| The Inhabitants of *Herefordshire*, *Radnorshire*, *Brecknock*, *Monmouthshire*, and *Glamorganshire*.

The HISTORY of

Romans, but inferior to them in the Number of Soldiers, he wisely removed the Seat of the War out of his own Country into that of the *Ordovices*, now *North-Wales*. There he chose an advantageous Post *, where the Passages were very difficult; draws up his Army on the Side of a Hill, at the Foot of which flowed a River, in some Places dangerous to be forded. This advantageous Situation of the *Britons*, at first, was a great Discouragement, to *Ostorius*; however, he was resolved to lead his Legions against them, but before he entered on the Execution of this Design, he thought best to convey a numerous Colony of Veterans to *Camalodunum*, for Security and Convenience. Several Cities were given to *Cogidunus*, a *British* King, their Ally, and to engage him still the more to their Interest;

London built
about this
Time, and
made a trading
Colony.

* The Place as *Camden* conjectures, had thence the Name of *Gaer Caradoc*. *Caradoc* being the *British* Name of Prince *Caradocus*, or rather *Caradocus*. It is a steep Hill on the West End of *Shropshire*, at the Foot of which runs the River *Clun*, where are yet to be seen some Relicks of these Stone Rampiers.

rest; according to the Maxims of the Roman Policy, to employ even Kings as their Instruments to enslave Nations.

AFTER taking this Care, *Ostorius* march-
ed with all his Forces, and since the *Brit-
ish* Commander was determined to put the
whole to the Decision of a Battle, began to
advance in *Battalia* towards the Enemy.
At his approach the Leaders of the several
confederate Nations, who had joined *Ca-
ractacus*, went thro' the Ranks, exhorting
their Followers to do their Duty, with all
the Arguments proper to excite their Cou-
rage, and animate them to heroick Actions.
As for *Caractacus*, he continually went up
and down thro' the whole Army, declaring
that was the Day, that was the Army,
which must either recover their Liberty, or
confirm their perpetual Slavery; he reminded
them of the glorious Actions of their An-
cestors, who had driven out *Julius Cæsar*,
and by whose Valour they hitherto had
lived free from Bondage, and to whom
they owed the Enjoyment of their unviolated
Wives and Children. Animated with this
Speech, the Soldiers, with loud Acclama-
tions,

*Caractacus op-
poses the Ro-
mans.*

The HISTORY of

tions, bound themselves by the most sacred Oath amongst them, never to yeild to Wounds or Weapons. This Resolution amaz'd the *Roman* General, who began to doubt of Success in an Engagement with such brave and resolute People, and especially when he discovered all the Circumstances of his present Situation, the River before him, the Ramparts raised upon its Banks, the steepness of the Hills. But finding his Army eager of Action, and crying out, that nothing was insurmountable to Courage, and having view'd the fordable Places, he gave the Signal for the Battle.

Engages Ostorius the Roman General.

They passed the River with much Difficulty, and some loss; but as they approach'd the Rampart, they were miserably galled by the *Britons*, who poured their Darts upon them from the higher Ground, and by which a great Number fell. The *Romans* not being able any longer to endure this Way of Fighting, immediately formed themselves into a continued Shell, a Practice usual with them in all difficult Enterprizes, *i. e.* they locked their Shields together over their Heads in such a manner, that they were as a Roof and Shelter to them.

IN

IN this Form they securely advanced, and made several Breaches in the Wall, which being only loose Stones was easily demolished. The *Britons*, not able to resist the Fury of these Disciplin'd Troops, when they fell in with their Swords, betook themselves to the Ridges of the Mountains, where they made a Stand against the *Romans*, who pursued them; but as they were not dressed in Armour, and only fought with throwing of Darts, so when they came to close fighting, their Ranks were easily broke, and put into Disorder. However under these Disadvantages, they fought with such obstinate Resolution, that it was with great Difficulty that the *Romans* gained the Victory. This Defeat was the more considerable by two Noble Captives, the Wife and Daughter of *Caractacus*. He himself indeed escaped, but flying for Protection to *Cartimandua*, Queen of the *Brigantes* (and as the Unfortunate are generally forsaken at a Time when Friendship is most necessary) he was by her basely delivered up to the Conquerors, after nine Years, according to *Tacitus*, but according to some modern Authors, seven Years

But is defeated.

Caractacus delivered up to the Romans.

Years brave Resistance of the *Romans*; by which he had acquired great Fame and Renown. His Fame, we are told, had reach'd all the Islands, spread over the adjacent Countries, and was celebrated even in *Italy*, and at *Rome*, where all long'd to see the brave Commander, who had for so many Years bid Defiance to the *Roman* Power. The Emperor no sooner received the News of this Victory, and of *Caractacus* being secured, but he ordered the Captives to be sent him, that he might shew in *Rome*, a Prince in Bonds, who had been always mentioned, as a very formidable Enemy. As he drew near the City, the People were summon'd, as to the Sight of some publick Games and Spectacles, to see the famous *Caractacus* led about in Triumph, and the Guards stood under Arms, when he pass'd by. Before the *British* King marched his Servants, and Retainers, carrying the Gold Chains, and other Spoils of War; next, his Brother's Wife and Daughter; and last of all, himself. All the others appear'd much dejected at their Misfortunes, and their Petitions were a little too mean for their Rank and Quality.

BUT

BUT the King himself, whose Intrepidity was never to be shaken, walked with a settled Countenance, without holding down his Head, or imploring Mercy, being brought before the Emperor, he made this noble Speech, " If my Moderation in Prosperity, *His Speech to Claudius.*
 " had been equal to my Quality and Fortune, I should have come rather as a Friend into this City than a Captive; nor would you have disliked an Alliance with a Prince Royally descended, and ruling over many Nations. My present Condition is as low and dishonourable to me, as it is glorious and triumphant to you. I was lately Master of Men, Arms, Horses and Riches; and what Wonder is it, that I was unwilling to lose them, and strove hard to keep them. Does it follow, because you have a mind to rule over all Mankind, that therefore, every one must readily and tamely submit! If I had yeilded immediately, neither your Glory, nor my Misfortune, had been so remarkable, and eminent, and as for my Punishment, Oblivion will soon obliterate it; but if you preserve
 " my

“ my Life, I shall be a living Monument
 “ of your Clemency.” *Claudius* moved at
 the Misfortune of so Great a Man, and
 especially at his heroick Behaviour under it,
 generously pardoned him, and all the rest;
 and being all unbound, they made their Ad-
 dresses of Thanks, and Acknowledgement,
 first to the Emperor, and then to the Em-
 press *Agrippina*, who sat by the Em-
 peror.

*Who grants
 him his Life
 and Liberty.*

THESE Victories gained by the *Romans*
 in *Britain*, were looked upon as equal, if
 not superior to the greatest Exploits of that
 People; not less famous, than the taking
 of *Syphax*, by the Great *Scipio*, or of *Perseus*
 by *Paulus*.

A. D. 52.

IT is said, that *Caractacus* being asked
 after he had taken a View of the City of
Rome, which was then in its Glory, what
 he thought of that stately City? Returned
 the following smart Answer. “ I am ve-
 “ ry much surpriz’d, that Men who have
 “ such sumptuous Habitations of their own
 “ should leave them, and come so far to
 “ deprive us *Britons* of our poor Huts.

It

It is very probable *Caradlacus* did not long survive his Enlargement at *Rome*, because there is no more mention of him in History: neither can it be found that ever he returned to his own Country.

HOWEVER that be, the *Silures* were not so void of Compassion, as not to be affected with the Misfortune of their King, and therefore strove eagerly to revenge it. Hereupon they furiously attacked the Troops left in the Country to erect Forts, killing the Commander, eight Centurions, and a great Number of the most resolute Soldiers; and had they not been succoured by some neighbouring Garrisons, they had been cut off. Soon after they defeated the *Roman* Foragers, and the Troops sent to support them; nor could *Ostorius* himself, by his fresh Supplies, put a stop to the Flight, till the Legions came in. Their Arrival animated the Fugitives; the Battle was renewed, and the Advantage, after having been long doubtful, fell at last to the *Romans*, tho' with little loss to the *Britons*, because the Day was spent. After this,

The Britons resume their Courage and gain great Advantages.

Other Advantages gained by the Britons.

they had several Encounters with different Success, according to the Circumstances of Time and Place. What most exasperated the *Silures* was, a Threatening of the *Roman* General, that he would not only extirpate their Nation, but extinguish also their very Name. Thus every Attempt that the poor *Britons* made, for the Recovery of their Liberties, was looked upon as Treason and Rebellion.

BEING thus animated with Revenge, they found Means to surprize and carry off two Cohorts, who were imprudently sent out by some greedy Officers to plunder. The Spoil and Captives they distributed among the neighbouring Nations, in hopes of gaining them over to join and oppose the common Enemy. In the mean time, *Ostorius* died with Grief, that he was not in a Condition to put an End to this War. His Death was no small Satisfaction to the *Britons*, because they attributed it to his great Concern, in not being able to put a stop to their Victories. He was succeeded in his Place by *Aulus Didius*, who found Affairs in a very bad Condition, by the
Defeat

Defeat of a Legion, commanded by *Manlius Valens*. But a Domestick War in a short time gave the *Romans* a prospect of Success, which was occasioned by *Cartismandua* Queen of the *Brigantes*, who was in high Favour and Esteem with the *Romans*, for delivering up into their Hands King *Caractacus*.

WHEREFORE relying upon their Favour and Protection, she took some Dislike to her Husband *Venutius* *, and wantonly rejected him, to espouse his Armour-Bearer, *Vellucatus*, on whom she conferred both her Crown and Person. This vile Action, universally detested by the *Britons*, caused great Disorders, and kindled a Civil War among the whole State. And probably the *Britons* embraced this Opportunity to revenge the insidious Dealing of *Cartismandua* towards their King *Caractacus*. However that be, the Queen was deserted by the

E. 2 *Brigantes*,

* *Venutius* or *Venusius*, was nearly related to *Caractacus*, and next to him in Valour and Merit; he was long faithful to the *Romans*, and induced into an Alliance with them, by the Persuasions of his Wife *Cartismandua*.

The HISTORY of

Brigantes, and reduced to great Extremities. She then sent to her good Allies the *Romans*, and implored their Assistance, who soon dispatched some Cohorts and Squadrons to her Aid. Upon which a sharp and bloody Engagement ensued, which was for some time dubious, but at last proved favourable to the *Romans*, who rescued the Queen from the Punishment which was ready to fall upon her. *Venutius* enraged, that he was debarred exercising Jurisdiction in his own Household, justly turns his Arms against the *Romans*; several Battles were fought with uncertain Event, and no great Advantage gained on either Side. However *Venutius* retained his Kingdom against their utmost Opposition, and gave them their fill of War. At length *Didius* growing old, and not able to manage the War in Person, committed the Care of it to his Lieutenant. In this Posture continued Matters here, till the seventh Year of *Nero's* Reign. *Didius*, and his Successor *Veranius* were more solicitous to preserve what was already gained, than to acquire more. *Veranius*, indeed, died in less than a Year, and was succeeded by *Suetonius Paulinus*, the most

The Queen of
the Brigantes
driven out in
spite of the Ro-
mans.

most renowned General of his Age; who Suetonius, sent into Britain. no sooner arrived at his Government, than he formed the Design of reducing the Island *Mona*, now *Anglesey*, (at that Time very populous, and the chief Seat of the *Druids*.)

To this End he built flat-bottom Boats to Attack Anglesey. carry over the Foot, providing against a A. D. 61. shallow, and uncertain Shore, and then ordered the Horse to follow, part of which forded, and part swam over*. On the other Side stood numerous Multitudes of Men and Women. The Women in Black with their Hair loose about their Shoulders, carrying Torches in their Hands, and running about like so many Furies, whilst the *Druids*, with Hands lifted up to Heaven, poured forth direful Excerations, and called to their Deities for Vengeance. The strangeness of the Sight, at first so surpriz'd the *Romans*, that they stood stock still, with their Bodies exposed to the Darts of the Enemy,

E 3

till

* The *Romans* are supposed to have passed from *Llanvair Point* on *Caernarvonshire* side, to a little Southwest of *Llanidan* in *Anglesey*, which is still the shallowest part of the *Pretum*, and there are remarkable Works yet visible near *Llanidan*.

Reduces it.

till at last being rouzed, and animated by the Exhortations of their General, they rushed forward with such Impetuosity, that they bore down all before them, and involv'd them in the devouring Flames of their own Sacrifice. The Island being thus easily reduced, a Garrison was placed to secure his new Conquests, and all the consecrated Groves cut down; for in them they used to sacrifice the Captives taken in War, and inspect their Entrails, in order to know the Will of their Deities. While *Suetonius* was employed, he was suddenly

A general Insurrection.

The Occasion of it.

recalled by a dangerous Insurrection of almost the whole Body of the *Britons*, who made a noble Attempt to regain their Liberties, and expel the *Romans*, being excited by many Provocations at once. But the chief was this: *Prasutagus* King of the *Icenians*, lately dead, a Prince famous for his Grandeur and Riches, had, by his Will, made his Daughters and the Emperor joint Heirs, hoping thereby to secure his Kingdom, and Family from Injury and Oppression. But it fell out quite otherwise; for under pretence of taking Possession of the Emperor's Share, the Kingdom was seiz'd by

by the Centurions, and the Palace plundered of every thing that was valuable by rapacious Officers.

BOADICEA, (in *Brit. Bydbig*.) Boadicea opposes the Injustice of the Romans. Widow of *Prasutagus*, a Woman of great Spirit, and Resolution, could not tamely look on, and suffer her Daughter's Rights to be thus insolently invaded, but protested against such unjust Proceedings, and with a surprising Spirit sharply rebuked them for their Rapine and Violence. But the hungry Officers, instead of listening to the Queen's repeated Representations, treated both her and her Daughters with Contempt and Ignominy; Majesty itself was insulted and abused; her Daughters, dishonoured and violated; the chief Men of the *Iceni*, deprived of their Estates; and the Blood Royal treated as Slaves. Enraged by these Indignities, and daily expecting worse, they thought it now high time seriously to deliberate in what manner they should secure their natural Rights, and ancient Possessions, and shake off the Yoke, which they could no longer bear. To this End, they assembled, and conferr'd Injuries with one another, and

The Britons Consultation.

*Recount their
several Grievances.*

strove to inflame each other, by enumerating their several Grievances; they represented likewise, that their Patience had no other effect, than to cause one Injury to produce another. That their Tyranny was grown to such height, that as to their Parts, they could be secure of nothing, that either Lust or Covetousness could recommend to the *Romans*. They seize our Houses, insult our Wives, take away our Children, and impress our Youth for foreign Service; and all this we tamely suffer, tho' it be in our Power to remove all these Grievances, and free our selves from such vile Oppressions; for did we but unite among ourselves, and exert our Force, we should have nothing to dread from the common Enemy. It was from this Resolution, that *Germany* shook off their Yoke, who had only a River, and not like us an Ocean, for their Defence; and the *Britons* are animated by as noble a Cause, their Country, their Wives, their Parents and Children, while their Oppressors are only excited by Luxury and Avarice. Let us but imitate the Valour of our Ancestors, and not be discouraged at the issue of an Encounter or two, and we shall

as



as soon drive out these Ravagers, as they formerly did their first Invader, *Julius Caesar*.

WITH these and the like Reasons they easily prevailed upon the *Trinobantes*. *Venusius* and his Favourers joined them, and several others that hated Servitude, with a Resolution to leave nothing unattempted for the recovery of their ancient Liberty. The *Roman* Historians themselves own, that the Injustice and Oppressions of the Emperor's Officers, gave the *Britons* but too just Cause to rise in Arms; for they were a People who chearfully complied, as *Tacitus* observes, with the Imposition of Taxes, and with all the Duties enjoined by Government, provided they received no illegal Treatment and Insults from their Governors. This they could not bear, nor did the *Romans*, says the same Historian, any farther subdue them, than to bring them to obey just Laws: they always abhorred unjust Encroachments, and would never submit to be Slaves. The *Trinobantes* were besides animated to take Arms by their bitter Hatred towards the Veterans lately settled in the Colony

The HISTORY of

Colony of *Camalodunum**, i. e. *Malden*, who encroaching upon the Inhabitants, turned them out of their Possessions, giving them the opprobrious Title of Captives and Slaves. Another heavy Grievance was, that *Catus Decianus*, *Nero's* Procurator, renewed the Confiscation of those Goods contrary to Agreement; and besides that, *Seneca* having with fair Promises sooth'd the *Britons* to borrow large Sums of Money of him, *Camden* says, 300,000*l.* and for Repayment to take their own time, did now on a sudden compel them to pay it in all at once with great Extortion. The Temple likewise, that was erected and dedicated to *Claudius*, was a great Eye-sore to them, and looked upon by all as a Badge of perpetual Slavery. Besides, the Priests that attended there, under pretence of religious Dues, swallow'd the whole Substance of the Inhabitants. These Grievances caused in the Hearts of the *Britons*, so great an Aversion to a foreign Government, that they were unanimously bent to

* *Camalodunum* was the first Colony of the *Romans* in *Britain*, and seems to have flourished for a Time, for they had their Magistrates superior and inferior, and a Temple erected to the Honour of *Claudius*.

to deliver themselves from it. The *Icenians* and *Trinobantes*, the former inhabiting the present Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Cambridge* and *Huntingdon*, and the latter those of *Essex*, and *Middlesex*, took Arms, ^{They rise under the Conduct of Queen Boadicea, c. a.} under the Conduct of *Boadicea*.

TACITUS tells us, that the following Troubles were foretold sometime before by several Signs and Prodigies. At *Camalodunum* the Image of *Victory* fell down of itself, with her Face turn'd as it were towards the *Britons*; certain Women, in a kind of Extacy, sung the approaching Destruction; unusual Noises were heard in the Place where the Colony assembled; the Theatre resounded with dismal Howlings; in the River *Thames* strange Appearances were seen; the Ocean appeared all stained with Blood; and on the Sands were left the Print of human Bodies. The *Veterans* in the Colony, terrified at these strange Signs and Presages, sent for Aid to *Catus Decianus* the Procurator, *Suetonius* being then in the Isle of *Anglesey*, but he could spare them no more than two hundred Men, and those not well arm'd; so that the Soldiers, who
before

Great Slaught-
er of the Ro-
mans.

before had rely'd upon the Strength of their Temple, and had made no Preparations against a Siege, were soon defeated, and both Colony, and Temple entirely destroy'd. The victorious *Britons*, after this, marched with an ardent thirst of Revenge, to meet the Ninth Legion, under the Command of *Petilius Cerealis*, who was advancing to relieve his Friends, they soon routed the Legion, and cut all the Infantry in Pieces; whilst *Petilius* himself, together with the Horse, with some Difficulty escaped to the Camp, and there saved themselves within the Entrenchments. The Procurator *Catus*, conscious of his Devastations and Rapine, upon the first Notice of the Insurrection, fled like a Coward over into *Gaul*. As soon as *Suetonius* had heard of these Things, he left the Island, and march'd directly thro' the midst of the Country to *London*, where at first he design'd to engage the *Britons*; but afterwards considering the Smallness of his Army, he resolv'd to quit it; and retire to some more advantageous Place.

Suetonius a-
bandons *Lon-*
don.

THE Inhabitants perceiving that they were likely to be abandon'd to the Fury of their Enemies,

Enemies, endeavour'd with Tears and Lamentations to divert him from it, and earnestly begg'd him to protect them.

BUT *Suetonius* foreseeing, that to save this Colony, he run the risque of losing the whole Province, ordered the Signal for marching to be given, taking with him all those who were willing to accompany him, and those whom Age, or the Pleasantness of the Place had detained behind, were all massacred by the *Britons*. The Town of *Verulam*, now *St. Albans*, met with the same Fate, and several other Towns, in which seventy thousand *Roman* Citizens and Associates perished : For the provoked *Britons* gave no Quarters, neither took nor exchanged Prisoners, according to the Law of War, but endeavour'd to revenge the Cruelties they had suffer'd, and to retaliate Injuries received. And tho' Historians brand the *Britons* with Cruelty and Barbarity; what Nation in that unpolish'd Age of the World, would not have revenged such Ravages and Devastations, when they had it in their Power? The Imputation of Cruelty and Barbarity can never be fix'd upon them
for

for taking a just Revenge; after they had met with such insufferable Insolencies: And besides, if the *Britons* have been guilty of those Cruelties, which Historians mention, it was because the *Romans* had set them a Precedent; for *Verunius* says, that *Suetonius* committed the like in the Island *Mona*, now *Anglesey*.

*He resolves to
give the Bri-
tons Battle.*

SUETONIUS, having in the mean time drawn together an Army of ten thousand well disciplined Men, resolved, without delay, to hazard a Battle, and for that End he chose an advantageous Post, a Place with a narrow Entrance, and defended behind by a thick Wood, and a large Plain before. He drew up the Legions close together, placing round them the light arm'd Soldiers, and the Horse on each Wing. The *British* Army, which consisted mostly of raw and undisciplined Men, was drawn up in Battalions and Squadrons, rejoicing at the sight of their Numbers, and so confident of Victory, that they had brought their Wives and Children with them to be Spectators of it from their Carriages, which they had placed round the utmost part of the Field

Field. *Boadicea*, having her two Daughters with her in her Chariot, drove thro' the Ranks to encourage the Soldiers, telling them,

" That though it had been usual for the *Boadicea's*
 " *Britons* to fight under the Conduct of their *Speech to her*
Army.

" Queens, yet now she came not there in
 " that Capacity, to fight for Kingdoms or
 " Riches; but as one of the common Sort
 " to revenge her lost Liberty, her own dishonourable Treatment, and the vilest
 " brutish Affronts offered to her Virgin
 " Daughters. That the Lust of the *Romans* was now grown so enormous, that
 " neither Old nor Young escaped its Fury
 " and Pollution. Therefore she, who was
 " a Woman, was for her part fully determined either to conquer or die; but the
 " Men, if they pleased, might still live in
 " Bondage." On the other Side, *Suetonius* was not silent at the Prospect of so great Danger, tho' he was well assured of the Valour of his Soldiers, yet he failed not to add to it both Entreaties and Encouragements; after which, he gave the Signal for the Battle. The Legions shelter'd themselves within the narrow Passage, till the *Britons* had discharged their Darts, and were advanced pretty

*The Britons
defeated with
great Slaughter.*

pretty nigh: Upon this Advantage they rushed out upon them all at once in the form of a Wedge, and being supported by the Cavalry and Auxiliaries, overthrew and dispersed whatever opposed them: Hereupon they were put into Disorder, which so encreased, as obliged them to seek their Safety at last in Flight. But they could not easily escape, by reason of the great Number of their Carriages, which was a considerable hindrance to their Retreat. The Romans gave no Quarter, but put all to the Sword, not sparing either Age or Sex, and even the very Beasts of Burden, fell a Sacrifice to their Revenge. *Boadicea*, resolving not to survive that fatal Defeat, is said by some to have ended her Days by Poison; but others write, that she died of Grief a few Days after the Battle.

A different Account of the Battle.

BUT *Dion Cassius* the Greek Historian, gives a quite different Account of this Engagement, for he says, that the Victory continued some time doubtful, that the Britons, tho' most of them were only rude, undisciplined Men, led on by a Woman, stood their Ground against the Legions set in Battle-

they
the
by
and
re-
fo
their
not
bet
ra-
Ro-
the
and
Sa-
re-
is
by
of

in,
n-
n-
ns;
if
od
in
e-



— Queen Boadicea —

Bat
hav
in t
one
Boa

T
hara
Tur
the
Har
Tok
was
of a
her
broi
a Go

S
Arm
End
by a
Upo
Aux
dest
tries
suspi

Battle Array, with great Valour, and would have ventured a second Battle had they not in the mean time been disheartened by the unexpected Death of their female General *Boadicea*.

THE same Historian tells us, that she harangued the Army from a high heap of Turfs, with a Spear in her Hand, and at the Conclusion of her Speech let loose a Hare, she concealed in her Bosom, as a Token of good Luck to her Army. She was a Woman of a tall Stature, with Hair of a delicate Yellow, reaching down to her Knees; and commonly wore an embroidered Garment of divers Colours, with a Golden Chain.

SUETONIUS, drawing together his Army, kept the Field, in order to put an End to the War, and was soon increased by a strong Reinforcement from *Germany*. Upon the Arrival of these Succours, the Auxiliaries were sent into different Parts to destroy with Fire and Sword all those Countries that were up in Arms, or appeared suspicious. But as Misfortunes frequently

F come

*The Britons,
tho' afflicted
with Famine,
continue.*

come one upon the Neck of another, their Misery is farther increased by a Famine, brought upon them by neglect of Tillage; for all the Husbandmen were employed in the War, and no Hands left to cultivate the Ground. Notwithstanding, they stood to their Arms, and became every Day more averse to a Treaty, upon hearing that some Differences were arisen among the Roman Governors. Nothing memorable passed in Britain, till the Time of *Vespasian*, the Roman Governors that succeeded *Suetonius* carefully avoiding to give the Britons any Molestation; nay, they did not even attempt to recover the Island of *Anglesey*; so that Britain enjoyed Peace and Tranquillity during the short Reigns of *Galba* and *Otho*. But when *Vespasian* came to the Empire, he sent *Petilius Cerealis* with a great Army into Britain, who as soon as arrived, boldly attacked the *Brigantes*, the most numerous and most considerable Nation among the Britons. There followed many Engagements between *Venutius* and him, and some which proved very bloody. However *Venutius*, in spite of all Opposition, retained his Liberty, and most part

*They enjoy
Peace for some
time.*

of his Country remained unvanquish'd. Towards the End of *Vespasian's* Reign, *Julius Agricola* was sent into *Britain*, a renown'd Commander, and well acquainted with the Tempers of the *Britons*, having been instructed in the Art of War in this Island, under *Suetonius Paulinus*.

SOME time before his Arrival the *Or-* *Agricola sent into Britain.*
doVICES, now *North-Wales*, had wholly de- A. D. 76.
 stroyed a Body of *Roman* Horse, quartered on the Borders of their Country, and by so great an Exploit, stirr'd up the whole Province to Arms. *Agricola*, tho' the Summer was almost spent, gather'd together his Forces, and resolv'd to march against these formidable People, who kept themselves upon the Ridges of the Mountains. He *His Exploits during his first Campaign.*
 therefore marching in Person before his Army, led them to the Engagement upon the Ascent. The Soldiers, encouraged by their General's Example, boldly attacked the *Britons*, put some to flight and made a dreadful Slaughter of the rest. Encouraged with this Success, he determin'd without delay to reduce the Island of *Anglesey*, from whence *Suetonius* had been recalled by the

general Insurrection of *Britain*. As this Design was suddenly laid, and therefore Ships were wanting for the Expedition, he ordered a choice Body of Auxiliaries, who were well acquainted with the Shallows, and according to the Custom of their Native Country, were dextrous in swimming, so as to manage themselves, their Horses, and Armour, in their Passage. These passed over with such Silence and Regularity, and made so sudden an Attack, as surpriz'd the Inhabitants, and put them into the utmost Consternation; for as they did not imagine or suspect any such thing, and who they knew to have no Shipping, so likewise were they wholly unprepared, and therefore obliged immediately to sue for Peace, and make a Surrender of the Island to *Agricola*. But as he well knew the Temper of the *Britons*, and as he had also learned from the impolitick Conduct of others, that Clemency was not less necessary than Force, and that Affairs would never be settled by the Use of the Sword, while Grievances and Oppressions continued unredressed. Wherefore he employed himself all the Winter following, in regulating many Abuses crept in

*Recovers the
Island of Anglesey.*

*And reforms
several Abuses.*

in by the Avarice and Corruption of former Governors. He took care to prevent Extortions in any Shape, which had been very grievous and burthensome to the *Britons*.

FOR the Collectors would often, under pretence of securing the Tribute, insolently lock up their Barns, and oblige them to buy their own Corn at a dear Rate, and afterwards sell it back again at a poor Price. Besides, the poor People were compell'd to take long Journeys, and carry Grain across the several Countries to Places far off, for the Service of their several Companies in Winter-Quarters, unless, indeed, they freed themselves from that Trouble, with large Presents and Gratuities.

ALL these Grievances were utterly removed by *Agricola* in his first Year; by which means he gain'd the Affections of the *Britons* in such Degree, that they began to be reconciled to the *Roman* Government, and to live in a State of Peace, which State, partly by the Negligence, and partly by the Avarice of former Governors, had been no less dreaded than that of War. In

He gains the Love of the Britons.

A.D. 79.

the Beginning of Summer, he drew together his Army, and marched farther into the Country, bending his Course towards the *North*, where he made some Acquisitions. Those of the *Brigantes*, that were not subdued by *Petilius Cerealis*, he forced to submit, as also, did he the *Meatae*, a People about *Tweed*. Nay, such were his Successes, (if *Tacitus* does not compliment his Father-in-law) that he penetrated as far as the *Firth* of *Edinburgh*, and placed Garrisons and Fortresses on the *Isthmus* between *Clyde* and *Forth*. The following Winter *Agricola* applied himself to Civil Affairs. His chief Care was to soften the Manners of the *Britons*, and instil into them a Desire to imitate those of the *Romans*; by building Temples, Houses and Places of Resort. He likewise took particular Care of the Education of the Sons of their Chiefs, not only appointed their Instructors, but also what they were to be instructed in, *viz.* the Liberal Arts and Sciences, finding that they were naturally no ill Soil, and might be cultivated with better Advantage, than their Neighbours the *Gauls*; and such was his Success herein, that those

those who but lately despised the *Roman* Language, were now become fond of its Beauties: Thence they began to dress after the *Roman* Manner, and frequently put on the Gown. Thus, by degrees, their Passions were tainted with Luxury and Effeminacy, which robb'd them of their ancient Simplicity of Manners. Sumptuous Living, beautiful Galleries, costly Baths, were (according to the Observation of *Tacitus*) by the Unexperienced esteem'd Politeness, which in time would ripen them for Slavery.

AGRICOLA, in his third and fourth Campaign, advanced far North, and discovered new Countries; Parts of *Britain*, to which the *Romans* never carried their Arms before. He subdued the People, who inhabited between the *Tweed*, and the two Friths, *Gloa* and *Bodotria*, now known by the Names of *Dunbritton* and *Edinburgh* Friths, which, by the Influx of Sea-Tides, is dilated to a great Breadth, and flows so far up the Country, that they are parted only by a narrow Neck of Land, not above sixteen Miles over. Upon this Isthmus or Neck *A. D. 84.* of Land, *Agricola* raises Forts and places

*Subdues the
Caledonians.*

Garrisons, for repelling the Enemy, and securing the *Roman* Province from their Invasions; and by this Means, they were removed, as it were; into another Island. These two Rivers, one would think, might have serv'd for Boundaries of their Conquests, and the Nations beyond them suffer'd to live undisturbed; but the Ambition of the *Romans* knew no Bounds. Hence *Agricola* not contented with the Honour he had already acquired, push'd on his Conquests, the next and the following Summers, even among the remotest Nations, whose very Names were unknown to the *Romans* †

† *Tacitus* says, that *Agricola* in this Campaign sent his Navy to coast along the Shore to spread the Terror of their Arms in different Places, while he himself, with an Army lightly equipped, in which were some of the bravest *Britons*, the Effects of whose Friendship he had often experienced, marched on to the *Grampian* Hills, upon which the *Caledonians* were already encamped, to the number of Thirty thousand, without counting the Volunteers, who were still increasing, and flocking thither to be present at a Battle, whereof the Event was to decide their Fate. Both Armies being drawn up, *Galgacus* who commanded the *Caledonians*, exceeded in Descent and Magnanimity, all their other Leaders.

at the same time order'd his Fleet to coast along the Shore, and take a View of the Northern Sea-Ports. This was the first Time that ever a *Roman* Fleet appeared in those Seas, and the first that proved *Britain* to be, what was only thought before, an Island. Thus, after many Struggles and Contests with the most powerful Nation in the World, the greatest Part of *Britain* was at length subdued, and reduced into a *Roman* Province; but they were not Masters of it; for what *Agricola* won, was soon after lost by *Domitian*, either for want of Valour, or else neglected thro' Jealousy and Envy:

THE *Roman* Historians scarce take any notice of the Transactions in *Britain*, till The Emperor Adrian goes over to Britain. A. D. 117.

G

Leaders, in an Harangue, is said to have represented to them, that being at the very Extremity of the Island, they had no Resource but in Victory, and it was by that alone they could redeem themselves from perpetual Slavery.

This *Galgacus* was called by the *Britons* *Galauc ap Lliennauc*, and is mention'd in the *Triades* as one of the three great Heroes of *Britain*.

the Reign of the Emperor *Adrian*, who came over into this Island, and built a Wall eighty Miles in length, after which he return'd triumphantly to *Rome*, where he assumed the Title of *Restorer of Britain*, as it appears from some of his Coins.

Marius King of
Britain beats
the Picts and
kills their
King.

WHEREFORE, for a more particular Account of what passed in this Island, we must recur to *British* Historians, and other succeeding Writers. According to whom, we find, that after the Death of *Arviragus* his Son *Marius* succeeded him in the Kingdom, a Prince of great Prudence and Wisdom. In his Reign, a certain King of the *Picts*, named *Rodric*; came from *Scythia*, with a great Fleet, and made an Irruption into the North Part of *Britain*, and committed great Devastations. *Marius*, upon the first Notice of his Arrival, assembled his Army, and went in quest of the Enemy, and in the Engagement killed him, which gained *Marius* a compleat Victory. In token whereof he erected a Monument of Stone in the Country since called *Westmaria*, or *Westmarland*. After he had restored

stored Peace to his People, he reformed many Things throughout his Kingdom, and govern'd it after his Father's Example with great Uprightness and Integrity. As soon as he had ended his Days, his Son *Coilus* succeeded him in the Government, who, having his Education at *Rome*, and thereby inured to the Customs and Manners of the *Romans*, was firmly attach'd to their Interest. So that we find nothing else remarkable in his Reign. He left a Son named *Lucius*, who succeeded him, a Prince eminent on many Accounts, but especially as he was the first Christian Sovereign of this Nation. He dedicated all his Thoughts and Cares to the Service of his Country, and remained firmly attached to the Christian Religion. He is supposed to have been a King of the *Regni*, within the *Roman* Province, and a Successor, at some distance, of King *Cogidunus*. I shall speak more largely of this King in the State of the *British* Church. This Monarch dying without Issue, left the Kingdom in great Disorder.

THE Senate, upon hearing the News of *Lucius's* Death, and how the *British* Princes were creating Seditions, and contending for Empire, immediately dispatch'd *Severus* with two Legions to suppress these Commotions. He was no sooner arrived, but he march'd against the *Britons*, and gave them Battle. Some of them laid down their Arms and surrendered at Discretion; others more turbulent, he compelled after several Engagements to fly beyond *Deira* into *Albania*.

Severus subdues Part of Britain and obliges Fulgenius to retire Northward.

FROM whence, under the Conduct of *Fulgenius*, they made frequent Irruptions into the Southern Provinces, and killed many both of their Countrymen and the *Romans*. The Emperor not being able to bear these Incurfions, resolved to provide against such Inroads for the future. And accordingly he ordered a Wall to be built *
between

* This Wall, of which there are yet some Remains to be seen, was called by the *Britons* *Mûr Sefer*, i. e. *The Wall of Severus*. The *English*

between *Deira* and *Albania*, extending from the *German* to the *Irish* Ocean, which for a long time secured the Southern Parts. *Fulgenius* being thus pent up, and perceiving he could do nothing considerable with so small a Number of Forces, resolved to go into *Scythia*, and procure the Assistance of the *Picts*, in order to reinstate him in his former Dignity. Having therefore gained over the *Picts*, he returned with a numerous Fleet, and made a Descent on the Northern side of *Humber*. From whence he march'd directly to *York*, and laid siege to that City. The *Britons* no sooner received Notice of his Approach, but the greatest part of them abandoned *Severus*, and went over to *Fulgenius*.

G 3

How-

English call it the *Picts Wall*, as it separated the *Picts* from the *Britons*. It is said that there was a brazen Trumpet so artificially laid in the Wall between each Castle and Tower, that at the approach of the Enemy, Notice might be easily and soon given by every one to their Neighbour,

Severus slain.

HOWEVER this did not hinder *Severus* from taking the Field, and hastening to the Relief of the besieged. Where a sharp Engagement ensued, in which he was slain with abundance of his Men, and *Fulgenius* soon after died of his Wounds. *Severus* was buried at *York*, which City was afterwards taken by his Legions, leaving behind him two Sons, *Bassianus* by a former, and *Geta* by a second Wife. After the Death of *Severus* the Romans placed *Geta* on the Throne, preferring him to his Brother, on account of his being a *Roman* by both his Parents.

His Election however was opposed by the *Britons*, who unanimously declared in favour

Xiphiline says, that in *Severus's* Time there was a Prince in *Caledonia*, named *Argentocoxus*, whose Wife being upbraided by *Julia* the Empress with Adultery, returned this bold Answer. The *Roman* Ladies have little Reason to reproach us, since we do publickly with the best of our Men no more than what they do privately with the worst of their Slaves and Bond-Men.

favour of *Bassianus*, as being the Eldest, and a *Briton* by the Mother's Side. This occasion'd a sharp Engagement between the contending Princes, wherein *Geta* was slain; upon which *Bassianus* took Possession of the Kingdom. In his Reign a Person of a mean Extraction, nam'd *Carausius*, who had distinguished himself by his Courage in several Engagements, was intrusted with the Command of the *Roman Fleet*, and had Orders to scour the Seas of Pirates, who continually infested the Coasts of *Gaul* and *Britain*. *Carausius*, who looked upon this Expedition as a glorious Harvest, soon found Means to fill his Coffers, either by stripping the Pirates of their Booties, or dividing the Spoils with them; and pillaging the adjacent Islands where he reduced many Cities, and amass'd great Sums of Money. Growing Rich, and in Consequence more Powerful, he began leisurely and by degrees to slight the Emperor's Commands; which gave a great deal of Uneasiness to the Senate, who all agreed to have him assassinated. *Carausius* being informed of this,

*Carausius
made King
of Britain.*

proposed to the *Britons*, that on Condition they would place him on the *British* Throne, he would engage not only to clear the Island of all the *Romans*, but free it from the Invasions of other Nations. The *Britons* readily complied with his Proposal; whereupon he immediately fell upon *Bassianus*, and killed him, and then took Possession of the Kingdom. *Carausius* now invested with the Sovereign Power, which he had for some time impatiently coveted, performed in the first place his Promises to the *Picts*, whom he had engaged in his Interest, and with great Presents prevailed upon them to betray *Bassianus*; in return for which Favour he gave them a Place in *Albania* to dwell in, which they kept for some time. The Senate upon the News of these Proceedings of *Carausius*, dispatched *Allectus* with three Legions to kill the Ufurper, and to reduce the revolted *Britons*.

A. D. 296.

*Allectus kills
Carausius.*

HE was sooner arrived than he gave *Carausius* Battle, killed him, and seized on the Kingdom. Being placed on the Throne, he exercised a tyrannical Power, and treated those

those *Britons* that sided with *Carausius* with great Severity. This cruel Treatment roused at length *Asclepiodotus* Duke of *Cornwall*, to the Resolution of delivering his Country from the Tyranny of *Allectus*. In this generous Design, he assembled all the Forces he could, with which he marched towards *London*, in order to engage *Allectus*, who was there celebrating a Feast to his tutelary Gods.

BUT he was no sooner informed of *Asclepiodotus's* Approach, than he quitted the Sacrifice, and marched out to meet him. Whereupon a hot Engagement ensued, in which the *Britons* had the Advantage, and at last gained a compleat Victory by an entire Rout of the *Romans*; *Allectus* himself, and most part of his Army, was slain in the Pursuit. After this Defeat, *Livius Gallus*, *Allectus's* Colleague, with the rest of the *Romans*, shut themselves up in the City of *London*; which *Asclepiodotus* no sooner heard, but he immediately went and laid siege to the City. This Place holding out longer than he expected, he

Allectus is slain by Asclepiodotus.

sent,

sent Messengers to all the Nobles of *Britain*, to signify to them how he had cut off *Allectus*, with a great Number of his Men, and was then besieging *Gallus*, and the rest of the *Romans* in *London*. And therefore earnestly desired them to advance as expeditiously as they could to his Assistance; adding withal, that they ought not to lose the present Opportunity of rooting out the *Romans*. The ardent Desire of the *Britons* to get rid of the *Romans*, made them flock to the King with such Expedition, that he soon found himself at the Head of a very powerful Army, and able to carry on the Siege with Vigour. Accordingly they made a general Assault, and battered the Walls of the City so violently with their Machines, that they opened a large Breach, and after a very sharp Engagement possessed themselves of the Town, They were no sooner in Possession, but the *Romans* perceiving they had lost a great many of their Countrymen, threw down their Arms, and begg'd for Quarter; which *Asclepiodotus* was ready to grant them, had he not been prevented by a Body of *North Wales*

Wales Men rushing in, and falling upon them with incredible Fury, killed them all upon the Spot *.

ASCLEPIODOTUS, called by the Britons *Brân ap Llyr*, i. e. Son of *Llyr*, after his successful Enterprize against the Romans, ascended the Throne, and enjoyed it undisturbed for ten Years; during which Time, he caused Justice to be administered fairly and impartially throughout the Kingdom. After this, some Seeds of Discord between him, and *Coel* Duke of *Colchester*, began to appear, which soon brought them to a Battle, in which *Asclepiodotus* was vanquished

Asclepiodotus ascends the Throne, and is slain by Coel.

* The *British* Chronicle, tell us, they were all slain on a Brook within the City, which from the Name of the General, was afterwards called in the *British* Tongue, *Nant gallim*, and in the *Saxon*, *Gallemborn*, or *Galabrec*, now *Walbrook*.

About this Time a cruel Persecution was raised by that Tyrant *Dioclesian*, against the Christians, of whom great Numbers were put to Death in *Britain*.

quished and slain, after a Reign of thirty Years.

*Coel ascends
the Throne.*

THIS Victory set *Coel* at the Height of his Wishes, sole Sovereign of the *British* Empire, which he looked upon himself to have no less Right to than *Asclepiodotus*, being a Prince of the Blood Royal.

THE News of the Death of *Asclepiodotus* * was quickly brought to the Senate, who was highly pleased to hear that so great an Enemy to the *Romans*, was thus cut off.

UPON this Intelligence, they immediately dispatched *Constantius* the Senator, who had given undoubted Proofs not only of his Courage and Prudence, but of great Fidelity and Attachment to the Interest of the Republick,

COEL,

* On the Death of *Asclepiodotus*, his Son *Caradocus* retired with his Court and Family to *North Wales*.

GOEL, called by some *Godhebog*, i.e. Hawked-faced, being informed of his coming, made no Preparations to oppose him, not caring to hazard a Battle with a Commander experienced in War, and encouraged with Success. And therefore sent Deputies to *Constantius*, to sue for Peace, which he readily grants, on Condition he sends him a certain Number of Hostages. *Coel* did not long survive this Treaty, for in a Month after, he was seized with an *Coel dies*. Illness which soon brought him to his Grave.

UPON the Death of *Coel* *, *Constantius* *Constantius marries Helena, and takes Possession of the Kingdom.* took upon him the Sovereignty, and in order to secure himself on the Throne, he married *Helena*, the Daughter of *Coel*, a Princess of extraordinary Beauty, great Abilities

* Our Countryman Mr. *Rowland* confounds this *Coel* with *Coel Godebog*, for there is a wide Difference between the Times in which they lived, and besides, *Coel Godebog* had three Children, whereas this *Coel* had only one.

The HISTORY of

bilities and Accomplishments. The Britons called her *Elen Luydawc*, i. e. *Elen with the great Army*, for in her Expedition to the *Holy Land*, she led out of *Britain* a great Number of Forces.

By her *Constantius* had a Son, named *Constantine*, who became famous on many Accounts, particularly for his being the first Christian Emperour, and a great Favourer of the Christians. His Mother *Elen*, zealous for the Advancement of the Kingdom of Christ, took great Pains to edify him by her Discourses and Example.

Constantine
made King.

CONSTANTIUS, after having filled the Throne eleven Years, died at *York*, in the Beginning of his Expedition against the *Northern People*. Before he expired, he had the Satisfaction to see his Son *Constantine*, and appoint him his Successor.

In his Reign, there was at *Rome* a certain Tyrant named *Maxentius*, who seized on the Estates of the Nobility, and laid intolerable Imposts on the People. These tyrannical

tyrannical Proceedings became so oppressive and insupportable, that a great many Exiles came over into *Britain* to prevail on *Constantine* to assist and free them from their unfortunate Circumstances. *Constantine* moved with their Entreaties, promised to give them all the Assistance he could. And accordingly set out at the Head of a numerous Army for *Rome*, which he soon brought under his Subjection, and thereby became Sovereign Lord of both Empires. He took with him the three Uncles of *Helena*, viz. *Leolin*, *Trabern* and *Marius*, whom he promoted to the Senatorial Order. While he was employing his Arms in *Italy*, *Octavius*, called by the *Britons*, *Eudda* or *Eutha*, Grandson of *Asclepiodotus*, after several Years continuance with his Father *Caradocus*, at *Caerfegont* in *North-Wales*, being desirous to recover his Right to the Kingdom, thought this the most likely Time to accomplish it. Accordingly he drew together what Forces he could; and march'd against the *Roman* Governors, attacked and killed them, and then took Possession of the Kingdom.

Constantine

His Assistance is desired by the Romans against the Tyrant Maxentius, and subdued Rome.

The HISTORY of

Constantine having Intelligence of this, immediately dispatched *Trabern* with three Legions to reduce the Island. On his Arrival in *Britain*, he attacked the City called by the *Britons*, *Caerperis*, a small distance from the Shore, which in two Days he took by Assault. This News being immediately spread abroad, soon reached *Octavius*, who got together as great an Army as the Time would permit, marched with all Expedition to oppose him, and coming up with him near *Winchester*, gave him Battle, and put him to Rout. After this Defeat, *Trabern* betook himself with the scattered Remains of his Forces to his Ships, hoisted sail and steered his Course towards *Albania*, where he committed great Devastations; which *Octavius* no sooner heard, but he hastened after him, and came to an Engagement with him in *Westmoreland*, who proving now too strong for *Octavius*, forced him to desert his Kingdom, and seek Refuge with *Gombert* King of *Norway*. *Octavius* being desirous to be rid at any rate of such an Enemy, left Orders with some trusty Friends, narrowly

*Octavius put
to flight by
Trabern.*

to watch his Motions, and to wait all Opportunities of killing him. Not long after a very favourable one offered for their wicked Design. For on *Trabern's* return from *London*, an hundred Men were placed in a Wood, through which he was to pass, and there fell upon him unexpectedly and killed him.

THIS News being sent to *Octavius*, he soon returned to *Britain*, and having routed the *Romans*, was reinstated on the Throne. He became afterwards the wealthiest and most powerful Prince in all *Europe*, and continued in Possession of the Kingdom till the Time of *Gratian* and *Valentinian*. Returns to Britain.

OCTAVIUS being now advanced in Years, was desirous to settle the Succession before his Death; and in order to this he summoned a Council to deliver their Advice concerning whom of his Family they intended for his Successor. For as he had no Male Issue, and only one Daughter named *Elen*, born at *Caersegont*, to whom he might bequeath the Crown. Hereupon

H

some

The HISTORY of

some advised him to bestow her with the Empire upon some *Roman* of Distinction, by which Method they might enjoy a lasting Peace. Others urged that *Conan Meriadoc* his Nephew, a Prince in *North-Wales*, ought to be preferred in the Succession to the Daughter. In the midst of these Debates, came *Caradoc*, Duke of *Cornwal*, and gave his Advice, to invite over *Maximian* the Senator, and to bestow the Lady with the Kingdom upon him, who was Noble by Birth, being descended of Royal Blood by both Parents, * a *Briton* by the Father's, and a *Roman* by the Mother's Side, on which Account there was the sure Prospect of enjoying under him a firm and lasting Peace. This Advice incensed *Conan*, the King's Nephew, to a great degree against the Duke of *Cornwal*, and occasion'd great Disturbances in the *British* Court. However *Caradoc* persisted in his Sentiments, and sent his Son *Mauritius*, privately to *Rome* to inform

Maximus is desired for a King of Britain.

* He was Son of *Leolin* or *Lbewelyn* who accompanied *Constantine* to *Rome*.

form *Maximus* of all that had passed. *Mauritius* or *Maurice*, was a Person of great Valour, tall, and well proportioned.

WHEN he arrived at *Rome*, he was soon introduced to *Maximus*, who received him with all imaginable Civility and Respect. The Senator was at that very Time in contest with the two Emperors, *Gratian* and his Brother *Valentinian*, for the third Part of the Empire, which he claimed. When *Mauritius* understood how that *Maximus* was injured by the Emperors, took Occasion from thence to address himself to him in the following manner.

“ There is no manner of Occasion for you
 “ *Maximus*, to trouble your self about
 “ either *Gratian* or *Valentinian*, when so
 “ favourable an Opportunity offers of
 “ wresting the Empire from them. Di-
 “ vest your self of all Fear, and go along
 “ with me into *Britain*, where a King-
 “ dom shall be conferred upon you. For
 “ *Octavius* being now greatly advanced
 “ in Years, professed a Desire of having
 “ him for a Son-in-law, and leaving to

The HISTORY of

“ him the Kingdom. That the Nobility
 “ thought him worthy of this Fortune,
 “ and had sent him on purpose to make
 “ him an Offer of it. And if he would
 “ consent to go with him, and accom-
 “ plish this important Affair, he would
 “ not then fail of attaining his Ends; for
 “ the Treasure and Forces of *Britain*
 “ would soon put him in a Condition to
 “ assert his Rights, and drive both *Gra-*
 “ *tian* and *Valentinian* out of the Empire,
 “ as his Kinsman *Constantine*, and several
 “ others of the *British* Kings, who as-
 “ cended the Imperial Throne had done.

Maximus
 comes into Bri-
 tain.

MAXIMUS was exceedingly pleased
 with the Offer, and instantly set out for
Britain. As he was on his march thi-
 ther, he reduced the Cities of the *Franks*,
 where he found immense Treasures; af-
 ter which he put to Sea, and the Wind
 blowing fair, he soon arrived at *Hamo's*
 Port. News of this coming to the King,
 who was ignorant of what had passed at
Rome between *Mauritius* and *Maximus*,
 put him in a kind of Terror, and not
 doubt-

doubting but this was an hostile Invasion, he instantly ordered his Nephew *Conan* to raise with the utmost Expedition all the Forces he was able; *Conan* having made the necessary Levies, march'd to *Hamos* Port, where *Maximus* had encamped. As soon as *Maximus* saw such a numerous Army, he began to fear some Mischief, and in this Confusion he scarce knew how to behave; therefore thought proper on this Occasion to summon a Council to advise with them what Course was fittest to be taken in the present most urging Juncture.

Artfully declines fighting with Conan,

MAURITIUS declar'd his Opinion,
 " That open Force appeared a dangerous
 " Expedient; neither did they come with
 " any such Design. That they should
 " pretend to have nothing in View, but
 " the establishing Peace and Friendship
 " till they saw how the King stood inclin'd.
 " And the better to cover our
 " Designs, we must give out that we are
 " sent by the Emperor, on an Embassy
 " to King *Octavius*."

The HISTORY of

THIS Advice was approved of, and the Execution of it committed to *Mauritius*, who taking with him *Maximus* and twelve old Men with grey Hairs of eminent Quality and Wisdom, bearing Olive Branches in their Hands, went to meet *Conan*. The *Britons* seeing they were Men of venerable Age and carried Olive Branches as a Token of Peace, respected their Dignity and made way for them to their General. Then presenting themselves before him, saluted him in the Name of the Emperors and Senate, declaring that *Maximus* was sent on an Embassy from them to *Octavius*. To which *Conan* replied, That such an Army of Attendance was entirely needless to Ambassadors, and it gave Occasion to suspect he had other Designs in view. *Mauritius* answered, “ That it ill became
 “ a Person of his Rank and Character to
 “ appear abroad with a mean Retinue, or
 “ without Soldiers for his Guards. And
 “ besides, they thought this Precaution
 “ necessary to screen him from the Mis-
 “ chiefs he had reason to dread both on
 “ the Account of the *Roman* Power, and
 “ the

“ the Actions of his illustrious Ancestors.
 “ His sole Aim was to enjoy Peace, and
 “ for that End, our Behaviour ever since
 “ our Arrival, has been innocent and in-
 “ offensive, having bought all manner of
 “ Necessaries at our own Expence, and
 “ used Violence to no Man.”

WHILST *Conan* was deliberating whether he should give them Peace or Battle, *Caradoc* Duke of *Cornwal* happen'd to come with some other Nobles, and interposing in their behalf, engaged *Conan* to grant them Peace. Which being no sooner granted, than *Caradoc* conducted *Maximus* to *London*, and communicated the whole Affair to the King. Shortly after, *Caradoc* had the Satisfaction to deliver himself to the King in a short Speech, none being present but *Maximus* and his Son *Mauritius*, wherein he set forth the Orders the King gave his Nobility to give their Advice, in relation to the Disposal of his Daughter and Crown; how the major Part of them were for having her bestowed upon a Descendant of the Imperial Family, hoping

thereby to enjoy a firm and lasting Peace, Behold then! Providence has vouchsafed to bring you a young Man, considerable for his Birth, being descended both of the Blood Royal of *Britain* and *Rome*. He is nearly related to *Constantine*, and Nephew of King *Coel*, whose Daughter *Helena* possessed the Crown by an indisputable hereditary Right. Then he pressed the King to marry his Daughter to him, as most worthy of this Dignity, and to use all Expedition in an Affair which so nearly concerned them.

*The Kingdom
of Britain be-
stowed on
Maximus.*

THIS Speech made so deep Impression upon the Mind of *Octavius* that he hesitated no longer, but forthwith bestowed his Daughter and Kingdom upon *Maximus*. This enraged *Conan Meriadoc* to such a Degree, that he resolved to make War upon *Caradoc* Duke of *Cornwal*, and with this View retired to *Albania*, where having raised an Army, he entred *Humber*, and wasted the Provinces on both Sides. These Devastations were no sooner known to *Maximus*, but he resolved to attack *Conan*;

nan; accordingly he drew his Army together, and advanced with all Expedition to give him Battle, in which he had the Advantage. But several Encounters happen'd which for the most part were with various Success, sometimes *Maximus*, and at other times *Caradoc* prevailing, till at last the Dispute was ended, and both Parties reconciled by the Mediation of Friends.

FIVE Years after this, *Maximus* set about making Preparations, for putting in Execution the vast Designs he had formed, having resolved to make War upon the *Gauls*, being excited thereto by the Ambition of having it annexed to his Crown. With this View he passed into *Armorica*, now called *Little Britain*, and enter'd the Territories of the *Gauls* in a hostile manner. As soon as *Iambaldus*, who had the Command of the whole *Gaulish* Forces, heard of these Hostilities, he marched with all Speed to give him Battle, wherein, after a great Slaughter, the *Gauls* were routed and their Commander killed. *Maximus* was so elated with this Victory, that he thence conceived

Maximus subduces the Armoricans.

*His Speech to
Conan.*

conceived Hopes of reducing all *Gaul*.
Upon which he called *Conan* aside, and
said with a Smile, " Look ye, the Con-
quest of this Kingdom is a great Step to-
wards subduing the rest. Let us make
all possible Dispatch to surprize the
Cities and Towns, before the Alarm be
given to the other Parts of *Gaul*, and
the People take up Arms. For could
we get Possession of this Kingdom, the
rest would make no long Resistance.
Be not therefore under any manner of
Concern, that you was forced to give
up your Right to the *British* Crown,
because I design to make you ample
Amends here, for what I have taken
from you in *Britain*: To place you on
the Throne of this Kingdom, which
shall be another *Britain*, peopled with
our own Countrymen, and all the an-
tient Proprietors be driven out. The
Land abounds with Corn, the Rivers
well stored with Fish of various Kinds,
shaded with Woods, which make a
beautiful Prospect. In short, it is the
finest Country I ever saw.

U P O N

UPON this *Conan* return'd him Thanks in a most obliging manner, and promised an inviolable Fidelity to his Person. Having thus settled Matters, they march'd with their Forces to *Rhodanum*, which they enter'd without any Difficulty; for the Inhabitants hearing of the barbarous Rage of *Maximus*, abandon'd the City and betook themselves to Flight. And their Example was followed by other Cities as he advanced into the Country. *Maximus* having thus made himself Master of several Cities, put most of the Inhabitants that fell into his Hands to the Sword, and ordered them to be more strongly fortified, and garrison'd with *British* Soldiers. The rest of the *Gaulish* Nation was so alarmed with the dreadful Havock of their Countrymen, that thenceforward all their Nobility came and made their Submission to him.

MAXIMUS finding he had struck a Terror into the *Gauls*, promised greater Things than he had yet attempted, and by distributing large Sums among the People, he

*Reduces all
Gaul.*

*And makes
Conan King
of Armorica.*

he saw himself in a short time at the Head of such a powerful Army as would be sufficient to reduce all *Gaul*. But in the mean time, he began to lay the Foundation of a new Monarchy in this Province of *Gaul* called *Armorica*, and to people it with *Britons*. To this End he issued out a peremptory Order enjoining a hundred thousand *Britons*, with thirty thousand Soldiers to garrison the Cities and Towns, to be sent over into *Armorica*. Thus the Means for the Preservation of lesser *Britain*, proved the Ruin of the greater, as will be shewn in the succeeding Pages of this History.* After having settled the *Britons* in

* An *Armorican* Historian tells us, that three Colonies of Note have come over into *Bretagne*; one in the Time of *Constantine* about the Year 313. Another with *Maximus* in the Year 383. And a third under *Constantine* the Tyrant. *Ann.* 409.

And we read in the *Triades*, a *aethonh* or *ynys hon ygan Yrp Luydhauc o Lychlyn yn Amser Gadhyal y byri, i. e.* that one *Irpus* of *Norway* obtained a great Army of *Britons* to assist the *Cimmerians* in their Expedition against the *Romans* in the Time of *Gadhyal* Son of *Iri*.

in that Country, which from them was called *Britain*, he erected it into a Kingdom, and made *Conan* Sovereign thereof; having done this, he resolved on the Conquest of all *Gaul*. Pursuant to this Resolution, he march'd into the remoter Parts of *Gaul*, which after many bloody Engagements he reduced. *Maximus* every where victorious, extended his Conquests beyond the *Rhine*, brought all *Germany* under Subjection, and made the City of *Triers* the Seat of his Empire.

AND having now nothing to fear from the *Gauls* and *Germans*, he turn'd his Arms against the Emperors *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, whom he compell'd to retire into the Country, where he caused *Gratian* to be assassinated.

WHILST *Maximus* was thus employ'd, the *Gauls* and *Aquitans* took the Advantage of his Absence, and made frequent Irruptions into the Country, to attempt recovering those Lands from which they had been driven; but being often repulsed by *Conan*,

Several Skirmishes between the Aquitans and Conan.

Conan, they were at last constrained to retire.

AFTER their Departure, all Things being in a quiet Situation, *Conan Meriadog*, to shew the great Respect he had for his Soldiers, thought of means to procure them Wives, by whom they might have Issue, and thereby secure the perpetual Possession of the Country.

AND to avoid all Commerce or Mixture with the *Gauls*, he sent to *Dinotb* King of *Cornwal*, who had succeeded his Brother *Caradoc* in that Kingdom, for Wives for them.

As *Dinotb* was a Prince of great Prudence, and Valour, *Maximus* committed to him the Care of the Government of *Britain*, during his Absence. He had a Daughter nam'd *Urfula*, as remarkable for her Beauty as her Birth, and for whom *Conan* had conceived a violent Passion. *Dinotb* no sooner receiv'd the Message sent him by *Conan*, but he readily concurr'd in

his Measures, and accordingly sent his beautiful Daughter *Ursula* with eleven Thousand Virgins of the best Families, and sixty Thousand of mean Extraction to be married to the *Britons*, who refused to take them Wives from the *Gauls*. But it unfortunately happen'd, that as they were under sail, and steering towards the *Armo-rican* Coast, a strong Wind sprung up all on a sudden, which dispersed the whole Fleet, and sunk the greatest Part of them. Those that escaped the Danger of the Sea, had the Misfortune to fall into the Hands of the *Barbarians*, who infested the Coasts, under the Conduct of *Guanius* and *Melga*, and took all Ships that fell in their Way. These had no sooner cast their Eyes on the beautiful Damsels, than they courted them to their brutish Embraces; but because they would not gratify their vile Desires, and abandon their Chastity, the Pagans fell upon them and murdered the greatest Part of them. The Day on which this happened was afterwards celebrated by the *Britons* with great Solemnity, called *Gwyl Santesau*.

Guanius and Melga murdered 11000 Virgins, A.D. 392.

Shortly

The HISTORY of

SHORTLY after this, *Guanius* and *Melga* having perfect Information of the weak State of the Island, made a Voyage towards it, and soon arrived in *Albania*, where joining the Inhabitants, they made War on the *Britons*, and ravaged their Country without Mercy. For *Maximus*, as has been already mentioned, had drained *Britain* of all her Soldiers, and consequently so weakened it, that she was no longer in a Condition to make Head against the Enemy. Hence they sent to him to desire Succours against these Ravagers, which he soon granted, and accordingly dispatched *Gracian Municeps* with two Legions to assist them. These were no sooner arrived, than they attacked the Enemy, and after a most bloody Fight, obliged them with great Slaughter to fly into *Ireland*. In the mean time *Maximus*, with his Son *Flavius Victor*, called by the *Britons*, *Owen Fenddu*, was killed by *Theodosius* the Emperor. His second Son *Publicus*, Founder of *Llan-Beblick* in *Anglesea*, retired from the World, and took on him the Habit of Religion.

*Maximus and
his Son Victor
killed.*

As soon as *Gratian* heard of the Death of *Maximus*, he found means to ascend the Throne, and take Possession of the Kingdom; but indulging his tyrannical Temper to a great degree, he soon grew insupportable to the *Britons*, who conspired against him, and murdered him in the fourth Month of his Reign.

Gratian ascends the Throne, and is slain by the Populace.

THIS News was no sooner spread abroad, than the *Scots* and *Picts* began to make fresh Inroads, and to penetrate still further into the Country, where they committed great Devastations, putting all to Fire and Sword without Mercy. In this deplorable Condition the *Britons* sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, to implore the Emperor's Assistance, promising Subjection to the *Roman* Power. The Emperor out of Compassion to their wretched Condition, sent them what Succour he could well spare, which was one Legion, under the Conduct of *Gallio* of *Ravenna*. This Supply no sooner arrived, than they with Ease repulsed the *Northern* Nations, and obliged them to retire to their own Country. The *Romans* beholding with

The Britons desire Aid from the Romans against Guanius and Melga.

Concern the *Britons* thus exposed to the
 Insults of these Invaders, were extremely
 desirous to put a Stop to such Outrages.
 Whereupon they advised them to repair the
 Wall of *Severus*, to serve them as a Barrier
 against the *Northern Nations*; they told
 them withal, they were not to depend up-
 on the Assistance of the Emperor, who was
 wholly employed elsewhere; but to inure
 themselves to Arms, the better to withstand
 the continual Attacks of their Enemies.
 After this Exhortation, the *Britons* sent ex-
 press Orders throughout the Island, for all
 that were fit to bear Arms to appear at
London, by reason the *Romans* were about
 leaving *Britain*, never to return more. As
 soon as they were assembled, *Guethelin*, or
 as the *Britons* called him, *Cybelin*, Arch-
 bishop of *London*, was ordered to harangue
 them, which he accordingly did in the fol-
 lowing manner.

*Guethelin's
 Speech to the
 Britons.*

“ ALTHOUGH the Province of an O-
 “ rator has been assigned me by the No-
 “ bles here present, yet I find myself more
 “ disposed to burst out in a Flood of
 “ Tears,

" Tears, than to make an eloquent Ora-
 " tion. It is a most sensible Concern to
 " me, whenever I consider the weak State
 " of the Island, and how it was at once
 " stripped of Soldiers by *Maximus*, they
 " that were left behind, were People only
 " skilled in Husbandry, mechanick or
 " handicraft Trades, altogether unac-
 " quainted with Military Discipline, so
 " that whenever your Enemies fell upon
 " you, they forced you to fly and wander
 " about as Sheep without a Shepherd.
 " Wherefore you ought to have apply'd
 " yourselves to Military Discipline, and
 " not to depend on Foreign Succours.
 " Know ye, the *Romans* will no mote for
 " your Defence fatigue themselves with
 " such laborious Expeditions. And they
 " rather chuse to remit to you the Pay-
 " ment of the Tribute, than any longer
 " undergo this Fatigue. Therefore so long
 " as you have Arms and Ability to ma-
 " nage them, behave yourselves like Men.
 " Address your Prayers to God, that he
 " may inspire you with Courage and In-
 "

“trepidity to defend your Liberties and
“Glory.”

*The Romans
about return-
ing home.*

HE had scarce ended his Speech, when the People gave such a loud Shout, as if they had been animated all on a sudden. After this the *Romans* gave courageous Admonition to a dispirited People, and communicated to them some Patterns of their Arms. They likewise caused Towers to be erected at proper Distances all along the South Shore of the Ocean, where they most feared the *Barbarians* making a Descent. Notwithstanding all this, no sooner had the *Scots* and *Picts* heard of the Departure of the *Roman* Forces, than they fell to their usual Ravages, and committed their Devastations with greater boldness than ever. The Wall of *Severus* so lately repaired, was again Assaulted, and the Country Fellows, who were Night and Day on the Battlements, being utter Strangers to Military Toils, were pulled down headlong by the hooked Poles of the Enemy. This caused such a Consternation among them that they thought of nothing

nothing but saving themselves by flight. The *Barbarians* pursued them, and made a dreadful Slaughter of the Fugitives. As Lambs before Wolves, says the Chronicle, so were these miserable and helpless People worried by the cruel *Barbarians*. In this Extremity they had no other Refuge, but to apply once more to the *Romans* for Assistance. They sent upon this Occasion a very moving Letter to *Agitius*, or as some call him *Ætius*, then in *Gaul*. “ To *Agitius* thrice Consul, the Groans of the *Britons*, after having uttered some few Complaints, they add, we know not which way to turn us. The *Barbarians* drive us to the Sea, and the Sea forces us back to the *Barbarians*; between which we have only the Choice of two Deaths, either to be swallowed up by the Waves, or stabbed by the Sword.”

AGITIUS was then making Preparations in order to repulse *Attila*, who was entered *Gaul* with a great Army; and therefore having so much Business on his Hands at that Time, he sent them Word
I 3 that

that the Affairs of the Empire would not suffer him to assist them, neither were they to expect it. So mortifying an Answer threw the poor *Britons* into the utmost Consternation, not knowing what Course to take to free themselves from their Calamities.

IN this desperate State of their Affairs, the Nobility thought it necessary to convene a general Assembly, that they might consult, and if possible, find some Remedy for their Misfortunes which daily increased. In the same Assembly it was resolved to send *Guethelin*, Archbishop of *London*, to *Armorica*, to implore Succours of their Brethren.

Guethelin desires Succours of Aldroen.

ON his Arrival he was received by *Aldroen*, who was then King of *Armorica*, and the fourth from *Conan*, with great Demonstrations of Kindness and Respect, and having enquired after the Occasion of his coming, *Guethelin* spoke in the following Terms. The Calamities which the *Britons* have undergone ever since the Island

was

was exhausted of Men by the vast Numbers *Maximus* carried with him, and afterwards sent for to people the Kingdom you now enjoy, can be no News to your Majesty. May God grant you a lasting Tranquility in the Enjoyment of your Kingdom. As for us, the poor and scattered Remains of the *British* Race, are over-ran by an Innundation of the Northern People, who filled our Country with Desolation and Slaughter. Nor have we any Warriors left to oppose the Enemy. The *Romans* have Business of much greater Consequence on their Hands, and therefore are not in a Condition to grant our Request. So that now being destitute of all other Hopes, we come to implore your Assistance and Protection. *Britain* for many Years had your Ancestors on its Throne, and their Rights are now devolved upon you. Equip then your Fleet, and go along with me: Behold I deliver the Kingdom of *Britain* into your Hands. *Al-droen* answered *Guetbelin*, and represented to him, " That Time was when he would
" not have refused the Sovereignty of *Bri-*

“ *tain*, for he knew no Country so rich
“ and fertile as it, while it enjoyed pro-
“ found Tranquility. But now since
“ the Kingdom has been plunged into Ca-
“ lamities, and enslaved by *Rome*, it is be-
“ come of less Value, and even insignifi-
“ cant to him and other Princes. That he
“ detested Slavery, and therefore chose to
“ possess a lesser Kingdom with Liberty,
“ before all the Riches of the Island in a
“ State of Servitude. However, says he,
“ to preserve our Rights entire, I shall of-
“ fer you a Deliverer; I have a Brother
“ named *Constantine*, who has given seve-
“ ral Instances of his Prudence and Va-
“ lour. If you think fit to accept of him,
“ I will send him with two thousand
“ Men, to redeem you and your unhappy
“ Country from the Calamities they groan
“ under, and to take Possession of the
“ Kingdom.”

THE King had scarce ended his An-
swer, when the Archbishop returned him
his Thanks in a very obliging manner, and
when *Constantine* was called in, he in the
Transports

Transports of his Joy, cried out, Behold the King of desolate *Britain*, our Defender, our Deliverer, our Hope and our Joy.

Constantine made King of Britain. Called by the Britons Ey Cusenyn wat-dwr, i. e. The Deliverer.

THE Embassy being thus happily ended, and all things ready for their Departure, they embarked and arrived at the Port of *Totness*; where they instantly summoned together all that were able to bear Arms, to join them and engage the Enemy, whom they at last defeated. After this Victory, the *Britons*, who were before scattered about the Country, flocked to them from all Parts, and in a general Assembly at *Gilcester*, * placed *Constantine* on the Throne. The Ceremony of his Coronation was scarce ended, when he espoused a young Lady of *Roman* Extraction, and who was under the Care of Archbishop *Guethelin*. The King had by her three Sons, named *Constans*, *Aurelius Ambrosius* and *Uther Pendragon*.

Leaves three Sons.

CON-

* *Gilcester* a Town built in *Hampshire*, built by *Constantius*, and where part of his Body is said to be buried.

CONSTANS the eldest, he sent to a Monastery in *Winchester*, but *Aurelius* and *Uther*, he delivered to Archbishop *Guethelin*, who was willing to take Care of their Education.

ABOUT ten Years after this, a certain *Piſt* came to Court, and that he might more easily compass his wicked Design, he entered himself in the King's Service. Some time after, this Russian feigning to have some private Conference with the unsuspecting King, decoyed him to a Grove, and there stabb'd him with a Dagger, or a long Knife,

UPON the Death of *Constantine*, a great Contest arose among the Nobility concerning the Succession. Some were for electing *Aurelius Ambrosius*; others *Uther Pendragon*; and many for some other Persons of the Royal Line. In the midst of these Debates, *Vortiger*, Earl of *Urchenfield* and *Evaf*, went to the Monastery in *Winchester*, and informed his Cousin *Constans* of all that passed.

Vortiger Earl of Urchenfield takes Constans out of the Cloyster.

THE

THE Expectation of governing the Kingdom under this Prince, was a powerful Motive to *Vortiger* to declare in his Favour. With this View he secretly suggested to him, " That as he was the eldest
" Son, he ought to be preferred in the
" Succession to his Brothers, who more-
" over on the account of their Age, were
" incapable of the Government. That
" if he would be guided by his Counsels,
" and advance his Fortune, he would not
" only support his Pretensions, but also
" engage the People in his Service, and
" free him from the Monkish Habit, tho'
" it was contrary to the Rule of his
" Order." *Constans* was highly pleased with this Proposal, and bound himself by an Oath, to comply with his Desires. Then *Vortiger* invested *Constans* with all Makes him King. the Ensigns of Royalty, conducted him to *London*, and placed him on the Throne with his own Hand, without regarding the Opposition of the contrary Party.

CONSTANS being thus seated on the Throne, committed the Reins of the Go-

vernment to *Vortiger*, by whose Advice he was intirely governed in Affairs of the greatest Importance. For *Constans* having had his Education in a Monastery, and led a cloistered Life, was not qualified to govern. This, *Vortiger*, who was an artful and crafty Man, was sensible of; and therefore began to entertain Thoughts of ascending the Throne, he had so eagerly desired: for a violent Ambition was the governing Principle of all his Actions. Indeed, the present Circumstances seemed to be favourable for him. For the bare Name of King was all that he allowed to *Constans*, reserving to himself the whole Power and Authority of the Government, and all the ancients Persons of Distinction, who could have taken Measures to obstruct his Designs were Dead; the former Wars having swept away great Numbers, and as for those that were still left, they were either Infants or raw Youths, incapable to oppose his ambitious Designs. All these Motives concurred to inspire him with a Resolution to depose *Constans*, and seize the Crown. In order to accomplish this
Design

Design, he prevailed with the King to trust him with his Treasures, and to have all the fortified Cities and strong Holds put into his Hands, under pretence that there was an Invasion intended. *Constans* being of an easy Temper, and very credulous, came readily into all that he proposed.

VORTIGER having so far succeeded, removed such Governours of Cities, as he suspected, putting others in their room whom he could safely trust. These Measures being taken, he pretended an extraordinary Zeal for the King, and represented to him the great Necessity of providing for his Safety, by augmenting the Number of his Guards.

To this End, he prevailed upon him to take an hundred *Pictish* Soldiers into his Service; for he thought these Men the properest Persons to execute the Project he had formed, and by heaping Favours upon them, he soon found them disposed to come into his Measures. And accordingly one Night, whilst all were asleep, these

Vortiger treacherously contrives to have Constans assassinated.

Picts

Picts being heated with Wine, rushed into the King's Bed-chamber, and murdered him. Having thus dispatched the King, they cut off his Head, and carried it to *Vortiger*, who no sooner saw it, but he feigned all those Tokens of Compassion and Sorrow. And that he might be the less suspected, he immediately assembled the Citizens of *London*, for there this tragical Adventure happened, and gave Orders for the speedy Execution of the Assassins.

*Aurelius and
his Brother
Uther flies to
Armorica.*

But notwithstanding all this, some doubted not that the King was sacrificed to his Safety. Those who first discovered their Fears, were the Guardians of *Aurelius Ambrosius*, and *Uther Pendragon*, by retiring into *Lesser Britain*, where they were received with extraordinary Kindness and Respect by *Budec* King of that Country.

*Vortiger ascends the
Throne.
A. D. 446.*

VORTIGER, called by the *Britons*, *Gwrtbeyrn*, having attained his Ends by such extraordinary Means, and not caring to have any either equal, or greater than himself in *Britain*, assumed the Regal Dignity.

WHILE

WHILE he was flattering himself with having taken all necessary Measures to support himself on the Throne, the *Picts* were exciting Insurrections against him. For how careful soever he had been to conceal himself, the Affair came to Light, and the *Picts* having received some Intelligence of the Matter, were highly incensed at the Death of their Fellow Soldiers, and fully resolved to be revenged on the King.

GERMANUS Bishop of *Auxerre*, and *Lupus* Bishop of *Troyes*, came about this time into *Britain*, and by diligent Preaching in Churches, Fields and Streets, suppressed the *Pelagian* Heresy, and confirmed many in the Faith.

About the same time *Nennius*, a Nobleman of *Bernicia*, or *Northumberland*, was sent to convert the *Picts* to Christianity.

PURSUANT to this Resolution, they made War upon *Vortiger*, in which he was greatly distressed, having sustained a

considerable Loss of his Men. He had likewise reason to fear further Disturbances, from *Aurelius* and his Brother *Uther* ; who would not fail to attempt the Recovery of a Crown taken from them.

IN the Interim there arrived in *Kent* three Ships full of Troops, under the Conduct of two Brothers, *Horfa* and *Hengist*. But some Writers are of Opinion that *Vortiger* sent for them. However this be, *Vortiger* being then at *Canterbury*, and having received Intelligence of their Arrival, sent directly for them. They were no sooner introduced to the King, but he cast his Eyes on the two Brothers, who excelled all the rest in a graceful Aspect, and noble Air ; and having asked them of what Country they were, and the Reason of their coming into his Kingdom. To which *Hengist* replied, that they were born in *Saxony*, a Country in *Germany*, and the Occasion of their coming was to offer their Service to him, or some other Prince. For their Country being but small, and abounding more in Men, than in Food and Sustenance,

nance, they were compelled to discharge their over-grown Numbers from time to time, by casting Lots. The same Necessity obliged us, most noble King, to seek for a new Habitation ; my Brother and I being chosen Leaders of our Company, arrived in your Kingdom by the Guidance of *Mercury*. *Vortiger* made answer, that he was overjoy'd at their Arrival, by what Deity soever it was brought about ; for they happened to come very opportunely for him, who was in great Extremity, and threatened with a dreadful War, intimating, that if they would join him with their Forces, and engage in all his Wars, he assured them, that he would give them not only an honourable Reception, but also Lands, and other Possessions.

THE Saxons very readily came to the Terms *Vortiger* propos'd, and promised to assist him to the utmost of his Power.

BUT human Foresight, which is exceed-
 ing short and limited, oftentimes in think-
 ing to prevent an Evil, procures it: Shortly
 K after

Vortiger's Policy proves fatal to himself and Country.

The HISTORY of

after the *Saxons* had accepted the King's Proposals, the *Picts* with a great Army entered his Territories, and began to commit great Devastations: As soon as *Vortiger* was informed of it, he marched to give them Battle; the *Saxons* attacked the *Picts* with such Vigour, that they were obliged to betake themselves to flight.

HEREUPON *Vortiger* made a Present to the two *Saxon* Brothers, of some Lands in *Lindisfarn*, now *Lincolnshire*, for the Maintenance of themselves, and People.

IF *Vortiger* carefully prosecuted his Purpose, *Hengist* was no less intent on his Interest, for he no sooner perceived the Fertility of the Country, and the weak State of the Inhabitants, than he entertained great Hopes of procuring a Settlement, and establishing himself in the Island. Towards the attaining of which, his first Step was, to beg Leave of *Vortiger* to build a small Fort on some part of the Lands lately given him, pretending to make use of it only to lodge and secure their Plunder. *Vortiger*,
who

who fought all Opportunities to oblige him, readily complied with his Request.

Some Historians tell us, that *Hengist* on-<sup>He builds
Thong-
Caster.</sup>ly desired to wall in as much Land as

an Ox-hide could encompass, which being granted, he cut the Hide into small Thongs, and enclosing with them a Space of Ground large enough for his Design, erected a Fort with such Expedition, as gave

the *Britons* no time to oppose it. This new Fort, called afterwards *Thong-Caster**, raised in the middle of the Country, occasioned

the *Britons* to murmur against their King, whom they suspected to be secretly attached<sup>The Britons
complain of
Vortiger.</sup> to the *Saxons*.

Hengist, who was a Man of great Penetration, and was now privy to *Vortiger's* secret Designs, took an Opportunity, from their Discontent, to heighten the King's Jealousies and Suspicions against them, by representing to him, " That the

K 2

" *Britons*,

* *Caster*, called in the *British* Tongue *Caer y Garre*; in *Saxon*, *Thuang-Caster*, i. e. *Thong-Castle*: It lies about four Miles from *Grimby* in *Lincolnshire*.

“ *Britons*, since they were delivered from
 “ the Fear of the *Northern* People, were
 “ arrived to such a height of Boldness, as
 “ to entertain some Thoughts of depriving
 “ him of the Crown, and giving it to ano-
 “ ther. That this Hint coming from good
 “ Hands, he might perceive the Rebellion
 “ of his Subjects was no less to be dreaded,
 “ than the Invasion of the *Picts* and *Scots*,
 “ and therefore advises him to secure him-
 “ self from the impending Danger, by
 “ sending for a greater number of *Saxons*,
 “ and to strengthen himself with their As-
 “ sistance against the wicked Designs of
 “ his Subjects. He added thereto, that the
 “ rest of the *Saxons*, designed for the Suc-
 “ cour of *Britain*, were all in readiness to
 “ embark, waiting only his Orders.”

Hengist offers
 him more As-
 sistance.

Vortiger ac-
 cepts it.

HENGIST, having thus inflamed
 Vortiger's Jealousies, and fomented his Dis-
 trusts, readily gained his Consent; which
 the *Saxon* General no sooner obtained, than
 he wrote to his Father *Witigisil*, to desire
 him to send over the Remainder of the
 Forces as soon as possible. He acquainted
 him

him with the Beauty and Fertility of the Island, the Infirmary and Effeminacy of the Inhabitants, assuring him, if the Saxons were wise enough to lay hold on this Opportunity, they might hope for a Settlement in *Britain*. *Witigisil*, who had already conceived great Hopes of his Son's Expedition, forthwith sends him the desired Supplies. He fitted out sixteen large Vessels for transporting the Forces, and at the same time sent over *Efcus* and *Rowena*, eldest Son and Daughter of *Hengist*. This second Body of Saxons arrived in the Year of our Lord 450 about twelve Months after the first.

The Arrival of a fresh Body of Saxons with Efcus and Rowena. A. D. 450.

As soon as the *British* Monarch, and the *Saxon* General saw themselves thus strengthened, they carried themselves in a quite different manner from what they used to do, and the *Britons* observed a more than ordinary Coldness in their Behaviour to them. *Vortiger*, grown more powerful, became more absolute: He treated his Subjects with so great Haughtiness, as confirmed them more and more in their Suspicions

Vortiger and Hengist behave haughtily.

of him; he even made no Scruple of granting Habitations to the new Comers, without ever consulting his Subjects. A strict Union now began between *Vortiger* and *Hengist*, as they stood in need of each other for their mutual Defence against the *Britons*, who loudly proclaimed their Discontent.

IN the mean time, *Hengist* neglected nothing that might help forward his Designs. More especially he made it his chief Study to know the Nature and Temper of *Vortiger*; and soon found his Inclinations led him to Love and Pleasure. From these Passions he promised himself great Advantages, and accordingly laid a Snare, in which he thought this Monarch must necessarily be caught with this Design, he humbly intreated him to honour him with his Company at *Thong-Caster*, where he greatly wished to entertain his Majesty, to give him an Instance of his Respect and Gratitude. *Vortiger*, readily accepted the Invitation, looking on it as a favourable Opportunity to strengthen the Friendship contracted

Vortiger invited to Thong-Caster.

tracted with the Chiefs of the *Saxons*, and which was so necessary to his Affairs. *Hengist* received him with all possible Demonstrations of Esteem and sincere Friendship.

A sumptuous and magnificent Entertainment was prepared for him, but nothing pleased the Royal Guest so much as the

Hengist lays a Bait for Vortiger.

Charms and graceful Behaviour of *Rowena*, who was reckoned one of the greatest Beauties of her time. *Hengist*, under Pretence of doing Honour to *Vortiger*, but really with design to insinuate a Passion into his Breast, ordered her all the time of the Feast to stand before the King; which Stratagem had the desired Effect. *Vortiger* had his Eyes fixed upon *Rowena*, who was not wanting on her Side to improve every Moment to the Advantage of his Passion, and to engage his Pursuit, gave him to understand by her Looks, she was not insensible of the Honour done her. *Hengist* transported that *Rowena's* artful soft Endearments had won the Prince's unguarded Heart, was unwilling to give this growing Passion time to cool. He made a certain Sign to his Daughter, and she instantly

He falls in Love with Rowena.

went to the Side-board, and pouring Wine into a golden Cup, with which she approached the King, and on bended Knees said to him, *Liever Kyning, wass heal*, that is, dear King your Health. *Vortiger* agreeably surprized, turned to his Interpreter, asked him what she said, and what Answer he should make her. Being informed, he casts an amorous Glance on *Rowena*, and answered in *Saxon*, *Drinck Heal*, that is, do you drink the Health. Hereupon *Rowena* lifted the Cup to her Mouth, and just touching it with her Lips, presented it to the King, who receiving it from her Hand, immediately arose and gave her a Salute, which she received with all the Respect imaginable, being sensible of the Honour done her, and having made a very low Courtesy, withdrew, leaving the Monarch inflamed with Love and Desire. This may be reckoned a very fatal Moment to *Britain*, as the Sequel will inform us. So true it is, the greatest Events oftentimes owe their Rise to things, which, at first view, seem of very little Consequence.

FROM

FROM that Time *Vortiger* thought of nothing but securing to himself the Possession of the beautiful *Rowena*; tho' he already had a Wife, yet his Passion got the better of all Regards, so that he made no Demands her in Marriage. Scruple of asking *Rowena* in Marriage. But *Hengist* at first artfully pretended I know not what Difficulties, on purpose to add Fuel to his Flame. *Vortiger*, who with painful Sighs found every heavy Minute hang like Ages on his anxious Soul, found means to surmount all Difficulties. He He finds means to remove all Difficulties. began by divorcing his Wife, tho' he had several Children by her. After this, he promised *Rowena* the free Exercise of her Religion; and to prevent the Reproaches of the Saxon Princes in *Germany*, which *Hengist* pretended to fear, he found out a Method, or perhaps it was suggested to him, by which he thought to reconcile Love and Policy. And this was the giving *Hengist* and *Horfa* the Principality of *Kent*, and full Liberty to people it with Saxons. The And gives Kent to Hengist. cunning Saxon had no sooner carried his Point, than all Difficulties began to vanish; and no doubt but he started them on purpose

pose to make a better Bargain with the King; so now he thought it time to gratify his Desire.

*Whereupon the
Marriage is
concluded.*

He therefore delivered his Daughter to the amorous Monarch, and took Possession of the Province of *Kent*, magnifying this Proof of his Respect and Gratitude, as if he had laid the King under great Obligations, and done him over-much Service. *Vortiger*, who consulted his Inclination and not his Interest, thought himself a considerable Gainer by the Exchange. This Agreement was transacted with such Secrecy, that *Gourangan* Prince of *Kent*, was dispossessed before he could take any Measures to withstand it. So impatient was *Vortiger* to conclude this fatal Bargain. In vain did the *Britons* declare against this Marriage, and complain of the King's Liberality; that he would make the *Saxons* too powerful, and they might turn their Arms against them. *Hengist* had little or no Regard to their Murmurs, but took care to fortify himself as much as possible in his new Dominions, which at the same time, he

*The Britons
murmur a-
gainst Vor-
tiger.*

he was contriving to enlarge. But he <sup>Hengist forms
new Projects.</sup> thought it adviseable not to unvail his Designs, till he should be out of Danger from the *Britons*, who could not help shewing their Resentment at such Proceedings, as plainly discovered his Intention of settling in the Island, and now could no longer confide in him, but rather look'd upon him as a profess'd Enemy. While the *Britons* were making fruitless Complaints against their Monarch and the *Saxons*, *Hengist* was mindful of his own Interest. Tho' he had a good Body of Troops under his Command, yet that was not sufficient to carry him thro' his vast Designs; wherefore he thought it more proper to cloke them, till he was in a Condition to declare himself openly. The Situation in which he observed *Vortiger*, gave him Hopes it was not impossible to make this deluded Prince instrumental to his Designs, while he imagined he was carrying on his own. With this View, he pretended to be more than ever attach'd to both his Person and Interest, and feigned great Obsequiousness and Respect, in hopes by this Behaviour to bring him

him by degrees, to be altogether guided by his Counsels. *Vortiger* now looking upon *Hengist* as one having a tender Regard over him, reposed an intire Confidence in him, and blindly followed all his Counsels however bad and destructive: Which *Hengist* no sooner perceived, than he represented to him, “ the Discontent of his Subjects, who, in all appearance, waited only an Opportunity to execute the evil Designs they had formed against him; that no doubt but an Opportunity would offer, when the *Saxons* were fully employ’d in the North; and then being left destitute of the Assistance of his Friends, he would consequently be in Danger of being exposed to the Insults of the enraged Multitude; that he thought himself under an Obligation to inform him, his Subjects kept a private Correspondence with *Ambrosius Aurelianus*, who was at the Court of *Aldroen* King of *Armorica*, and probably had concerted together to set that Prince on the Throne.” It was not without ground *Hengist* artfully hinted at the Danger *Vortiger* was in on the

the account of *Ambrosius*. This Prince was *Ambrosius*,
the Son of *Constantine*, and Brother to *Con-* *who he was.*
stantius, whom *Vortiger* caused to be murdered and usurped his Right; and the Danger to which this Prince found himself exposed, obliged him, and his Brother *Uther Pendragon*, to leave *Britain*, and retire to their Kinsman *Aldroen*, where they waited some favourable Opportunity to set them at the Head of their Party. This being the Case between *Vortiger* and *Ambrosius*, what the *Saxon* General said could not but make a very deep Impression on his Mind. By these Insinuations, under colour of Friendship, *Hengist*, by degrees caused the *British* Monarch to seek from him the Expedient with which he intended to furnish him, namely the sending for a greater number of *Saxon Troops*. His main Drift was to strengthen himself against the *Britons*, in such a manner as not to stand in need of the King, which he could not otherwise bring about, than by the Method he proposed. *Vortiger*, who lost all Hopes of ever more gaining the Affection of his Subjects, and looking on *Ambrosius*, tho' at
some

some distance from *Britain*, as a very formidable Rival, saw no Refuge but in the *Saxon* General, whom he looked upon as his best Friend, and accordingly apply'd to him both for his Advice and Assistance. *Hengist* told him, " all the *Saxons* in *Britain* were intirely at his Service, but their
 " Number was too small to secure him against the *Britons*, who in all probability
 " would not fail to declare their Discontents openly, whilst the *Saxons* were in
 " the North, and therefore he could think
 " but of one Method to secure the King
 " from their Conspiracies, which was to
 " send for more Supplies from *Germany*,
 " under the Conduct of such Commanders,
 " as would implicitly obey his Commands."

More Saxons
arrive.

The King consenting to it, *Hengist* sent for a Fleet of forty Ships, some say three hundred, under the Conduct of his Brother *Ossa*, and a great Number of Troops; pretending, that while they were seated in the North, they would be a continual defence against the *Scots* and *Picts*, himself in the mean time, guarding the East Parts of his Nation. These new Comers began by
 waisting

wasting the Isles of *Orcades*, from whence they coasted along the Island, 'till they came opposite to the *Picts*, and there made a Descent, and forced them to retire Northwards. The *Picts* had no sooner abandon'd part of their Country, than the *Saxons* settled themselves so strongly in it, that it was not possible to drive them out. This third Body of Troops arrived in 452, three Years after the first. *Hengist* now seeing himself at the Head of a powerful Army, began to act with great Independency, knowing he had nothing to fear either from the King or the *Britons*; and would often send for fresh Supplies from *Germany*, under pretence of wanting Recruits to keep his Troops in good Disposition, without asking the King's Leave.

At length he pulled off the Mask, and broke out into bitter Invectives against the *Britons* for withholding their Wages, threatening to do himself Justice, if the *Saxons* had not speedy and entire Satisfaction. The *Britons* highly provoked at these Menaces, and at the same time mortified to see *Hengist*

A. D. 453.
Vortimer en-
courages the
Britons to
drive out the
Saxons.

gift in a Condition to put his Threats in Execution, began to rouse themselves, and seriously think of Means to free themselves from these insolent Foreigners. *Vortimer*, (in *British*, *Gwerdbevyr*,) eldest Son of *Vortiger*, a brave and valiant Youth, had hitherto beheld, with an extream Concern, how the *Saxons*, by his Father's Oversight, strengthen'd themselves daily, and had very much dreaded the Consequences of it. He no sooner saw the *Britons* in Emotion, than he laid hold of the Opportunity to represent to the Chiefs of the Nation, "That it
" was high time some effectual Remedy
" should be apply'd to the Evils they groan'd
" under. He told them, the *Saxons* owed
" their superior Force to the Indolence and
" Luxury of the King his Father: That
" it was therefore necessary to deprive *Vor-*
" *tiger* of the Means of continuing his Fa-
" vours to these Strangers, to the great De-
" triment of the *British* Nation, which
" was in danger of being destroy'd, if pro-
" per Measures were not taken soon to
" prevent their growing Power." This Speech made a deep Impression on the Minds
of

of the *Britons*, and caused them to consult among themselves about the proper Measures for delivering their Country from the Evils she lay under. To this End the most powerful among them, at the Instigation of *Vortimer*, entered into a Combination (of which *Vortiger* had not the least Notice) obliged this Monarch to make his Son his Colleague, and to commit the Care of the Administration to him. The Scheme was so well contrived and executed, that *Vortiger*, in a Moment, saw himself destitute both of Troops and Garrisons, and compelled to act according to their Desire, he not having time to call the *Saxons* to his Assistance. As he was in no Apprehension of his own Son, he omitted taking any Measures for his Security. Thus *Vortimer* was made King, leaving his Father only the empty Title without any Power. This new Monarch very easily persuaded the *Britons*, that nothing but Force of Arms could drive the *Saxons* out of their Country. It was very visible by the Steps already taken, they did not design to leave it willingly. The War being thus resolved upon,

Vortiger compelled to associate his Son.
A. D. 454.

The War against the Saxons resolved upon.

L

Vor-

Vortimer invited all to join him, and lend what Assistance they could towards the Recovery of their Libery, and the freeing themselves from their Guests whom they look'd upon as profess'd Enemies. *Hengist*, on the other Side, seeing he was likely to have a fierce War upon his Hands, made a secret and speedy Alliance with the *Picts*. [I am now going to give an Account of a War, which after a great Number of Battles, made the *Saxons* Masters of *Britain*.] The *Britons* and *Saxons* having prepared for War, were not long before they came to an Engagement. In the first Campaign both Armies met on the River *Darwent*; the *Saxons* under the Command of *Hengist* and *Horfa*, and the *Britons* under *Vortimer*; the second at *Epifford*, now *Aylesford* in *Kent*, where *Horfa* and * *Catigern* met, and after a sharp Encounter killed each other; the third in a Field by *Stonar* in the Isle of *Thanet*, where the

Britons

The Battle of
Epifford now
Aylesford.

* *Catigern* youngest Brother of *Vortimer* was buried near *Aylesford*, where four great Stones stand an End, with others across them, like *Stone-benge*. *Camd*.

Britons compell'd them to take to their Ships, and escape to *Germany*, not daring to return, says *Nennius*, for five Years after. But whether the *Saxons* were obliged to fly into *Germany*, or no, is uncertain; however, by the Report of most Historians this Battle was very bloody, and had certainly been very fatal to the *Saxons*, had not *Hengist* fled with the Reliques of his routed Army to the Isle of *Thanet*, where he defended himself till he received Recruits from *Germany*.

VORTIMER, after this prosperous Success, by which *Britain* was for some time freed from these formidable Enemies, began to administer Justice to his Subjects, and at the Instance of *St. German*, to rebuild those Churches, which had been beaten down by the *Pagans*. Against this excellent Prince, all the *Saxons* had a very great Spleen, particularly his Stepmother *Rowena* resolved to procure his Death by Poison; to this End she prevailed by Gifts and Promises upon a Person in Favour with

Vortimer, to administer the deadly Potion, which he accordingly did.

*Vortimer per-
soned.*

VORTIMER finding Death approaching, summon'd together all his commanding Officers and Soldiers, and liberally distributed amongst them immense Sums of Money, which had long been kept in the Treasury, exhorting them to employ their Arms in Defence of their Country and Liberties.

AND he gave Orders they should bury him in the Port of *Stonar*, and to erect a brazen Pillar for his Monument; persuaded that the Sight of it would strike such a Terror in the *Saxons*, as to cause them to return back to *Germany*: But the *Britons* soon forgot the great Merit of their King, neglected his Command, and buried him at *London*, in the sixth Year of his Reign.

*Vortiger resto-
red and sends
for Hengist.*

AFTER the Death of *Vortimer*, *Vortiger's* Adherents placed him on the Throne again, and, at his Wife's Persuasion, dispatched Messengers into *Germany* to *Hengist*,

gift with an Invitation to return into *Britain*, ordering him to come with a small Retinue, and with all the Privacy imaginable in order to prevent a Revolt among his Subjects. *Hengist*, however, had little Regard to the King's Command, and was wholly intent upon his own Interest, and on the raising a powerful Army for carrying on his ambitious Schemes. The Death of brave *Vortimer* gave him room to think of putting them in Practice; wherefore he returned into *Britain* with three hundred thousand Men. Of which, when *Vortiger* and the Nobility received Intelligence, it provoked them so much, that they immediately resolved to march and oppose his Landing. This Design could not be carried on so secretly but that *Hengist* gained Intelligence of it from his Daughter, and immediately set all his Wits to work to divert the Danger by sending Ambassadors to *Vortiger* to let him know that he had not brought this mighty Army with a Design to commit any Hostilities, but for fear of being attacked by *Vortimer*, of whose Death he pretended he had no Knowledge.

He added, that since he was assured *Vortimer* was dead, he had no Reason to apprehend any Danger; and therefore submitted himself, and his People to the Will of *Vortiger*, so that he might retain as many of them, as he should think fit in his Service, and the Remainder he would without Delay order back to *Germany*, desiring at the same time, that he would appoint a Time and Place for a Conference, in which Matters should be adjusted to his Satisfaction. *Vortiger* was highly pleased with this soothing Message, and, without further Deliberation, appointed the Calends of *May*, then approaching, at the Abbey of *Ambrius*, for the Conference; but many of the Nobility suspected *Hengist's* Sincerity, and therefore openly declared that they would not consent to a Peace. Upon the Return of the Embassadors, and the Report which they made of the Appointment, the treacherous *Hengist* formed a Design of assassinating all the Nobles of *Britain*: Accordingly he ordered a certain Number of stout Men, chosen out of the whole Body, as the most fit for any desperate

perate Attempt, to come to this Assembly armed with Daggers, or as the *British* History says, Cyllill hirion, *i. e.* long Knives, under their Garments, and there, while the *Britons* are busy in the Conference, I shall give you, said he, this Signal, *Nemet coure Saxes*, upon which be sure that every one be ready to dispatch the *Briton* next him. With these Instructions they went to the Assembly on the Day appointed, and began to treat of Peace, *Hengist* seized on the desired Opportunity, gave the Signal, *Nemet coure Saxes*, *i. e.* pull out your Daggers, and instantly laying hold on *Vortiger*, held him fast by the Collar; the *Saxons* no sooner heard the Signal, than they fell upon the unarmed *Britons*, and treacherously assassinated four hundred and sixty of the Nobility*. *Eldol*, Earl of *Gloucester*, or *Caergloin*, no sooner saw the Danger he was in, but he

*The Massacre
of the Britons
at Stone-
henge.*

L 4.

took

* We are told their Bodies were afterwards buried by *St. Eldad* in the Burying Ground of the Abbey of *Ambrius*, now *Stone-henge*.

The HISTORY of

took up a Stake, the Weapon that came first to Hand, and with it defended himself for some time, and killed seventy of the *Saxons*, but being over-power'd, was forced to escape, and had the good Fortune to arrive safe at his own City. Many of the *Saxons* were likewise killed by the *Britons*, who taking up Clubs and Stones, vigorously engaged the Assassins.

*Vortiger gave
four of his
chief Cities for
his Ransom.*

HENGIST having imprisoned, and ironed *Vortiger*, he had no other means of obtaining his Liberty, but by resigning to him four of his chiefest Cities and Forts, viz. *London, York, Lincoln* and *Winchester*. But this Acquisition was not sufficient to satisfy the ambitious Views of *Hengist*, for he cruelly ravaged the neighbouring Counties, and seized upon a large Tract of Land contiguous to *Kent*. This base Treachery awaked the Rage and Hatred of the *Britons*, who now could not look upon a *Saxon* without Horror and Detestation. And now *Vortiger* seeing the dreadful Havock which the *Saxons* had made in the Island, and being strongly touched with the Misfortunes

which

which he had brought on his Country, gave himself up to Despair, and retired into *Kymry*, now *Wales*. On his Arrival in those Parts, he had Recourse to Magicians, to know how he might be extricated out of the Difficulties and Straits which his Alliance with the *Saxons* had reduced him to. They advised him to build a strong Fort on the Top of some high Mountain surrounded on all Sides by steep Precipices for a Place of Safety, which was agreed to, and immediately *Vortiger* repaired to the Mountains of *Eryri* in *Caernarvonshire*, now *Snowdon*, *Vortiger building a Castle in Eryri.* where he assembled Artizans from several Countries, and gave Orders for the building of a Fortrefs on the Top of one of those Mountains, which was afterwards called *Dinas Emrys*. But for want of laying a firm Foundation, the Project had like to come to nothing, and the Builders were obliged for the present to desist from the Enterprize. *Vortiger* was no sooner informed of this, but he applied again to the Magicians, to know the Cause of the Foundation's giving way, who, not well knowing from whence the Cause proceeded, and greatly

greatly maligning a young Man called *Merlin* or *Merdyn*, for his Wisdom and Learning, told the King, that the Foundation of his Fortrefs would never stand, unless it was built with the following Cement, viz. To mix the Blood of a young Man that had no Father with Mortar, conceiving great Hopes thereby to get rid of *Merlin*, whose Mother had * had a private Amour with a certain *Roman* Consul, and she, to cover the Foulness of her Pregnancy, gave out that she was got with Child by an Incubus, or a Phantom. With this Design *Vortiger* immediately sent for *Merlin*, and commanding both the Mother and Son to be brought before him, asked *Merlin*, whose Son he was, and what was his Name? His Mother affirmed, that he was her Child, and that she knew no Man that begot him of her. To which the King replied, How could that be? and the Mother

* She was brought up in the Nunnery of *St. Peter's* in the City of *Meridunum*, now *Caermarddyn*.

ther answering, " That as she was one
 " Night with her Companions in her A-
 " partments, there appeared to her a Per-
 " son in the Shape of a most beautiful
 " young Man, who, after he had hugged
 " her in his Arms, and kissed her, va-
 " nished in an Instant, without one Word
 " being uttered on either side. But after
 " this he would often be talking with her
 " when alone, without any human Shape,
 " or any other visible Appearance. When
 " he had for some Time haunted her in
 " this manner, he at last had unlawful
 " Commerce with her, the Fruit of which
 " was *Merdyn*." *Vortiger*, struck at this
 Speech, ordered *Mangantius* to be called,
 and having enquired of him whether there
 could be any such Beings? *Mangantius* re-
 plied *, that it was the Opinion of several
 learned

* This *Mangantius*, called by the *Britons*
Mengant, was by Birth a *Briton*, and greatly
 skilled in the occult Sciences: He was one of
 the greatest Astrologers in the College of
Caerleon upon *Ussk*, wherein, we are told, were
 two hundred Philosophers at that Time, who
 studied

learned Men who had wrote concerning Matters of this nature, that there were such Beings. Upon this Answer, *Merdyn*, who was very attentive to what had passed, and apprehending the Magicians Design, instantly approached the King, and told him, that he would maintain that the Magicians lied in all they had said; and reproaching them with Ignorance, discovered, without Reserve, the sole Cause of the Foundation's sinking, which was by a deep Pond under it. *Vortiger* having heard this, gave immediate Orders for the Pond to be drained, and made *Merdyn* henceforth his Favourite *.

NOT

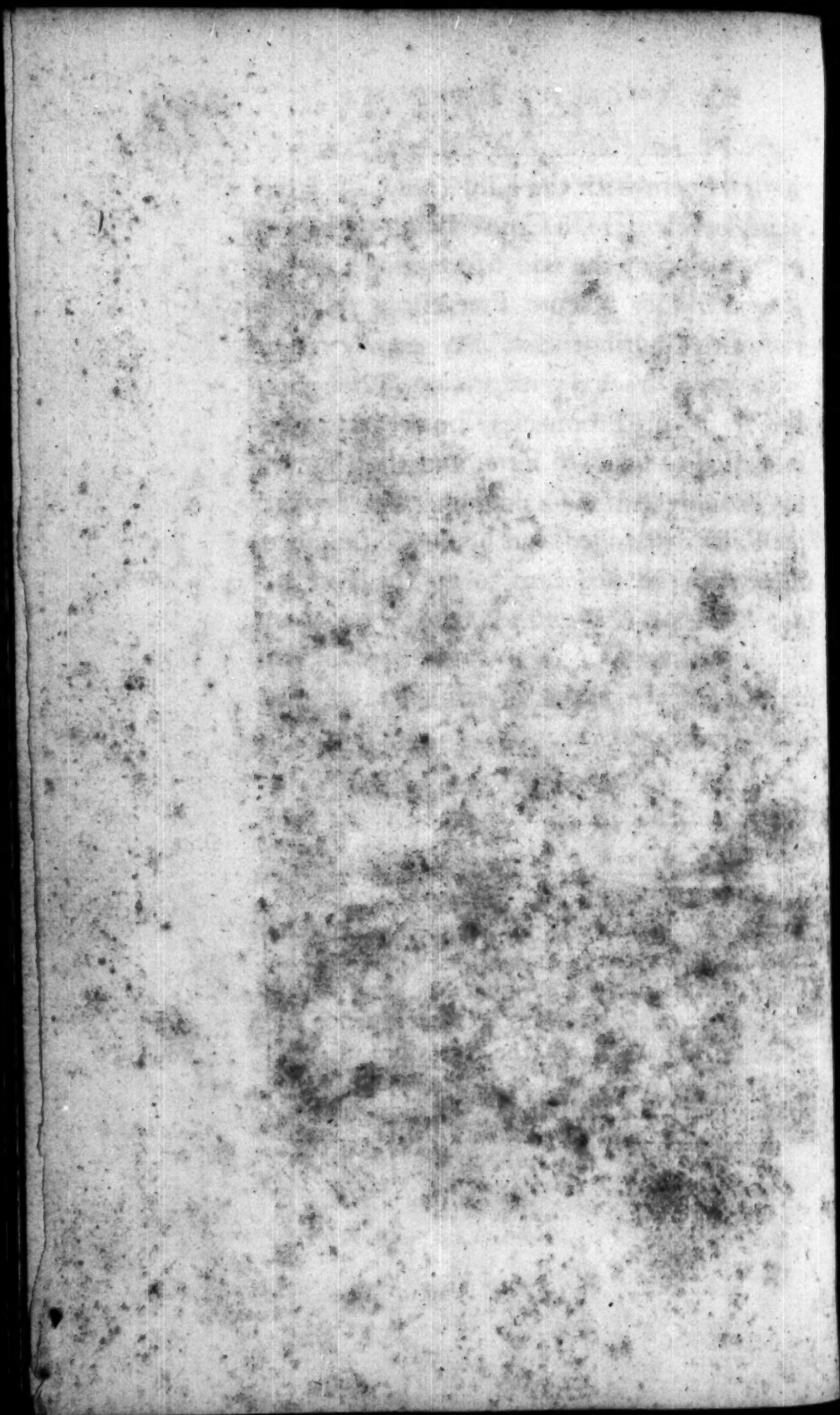
studied the true System of the heavenly Bodies, and their Motions.

Mangantius died very old, and in great Reputation throughout *Britain*, A. D. 460.

* This Story is embellished with an Account of two Dragons, being found asleep in a Stone at the Bottom of the Pond, one of which was White, and the other Red. These two issuing out, fell a fighting against each other, till the Red got the Victory. The Combat was no sooner over, but the King commanded



The Prophet Merlin or Mordhyn



NOT long after this, *Merdyn* being in high Esteem with the King, held, for some considerable time, a Conversation with him on the Top of the said Mountain, and delivered sundry obscure Predictions relating to future Contingencies. When *Vortiger*, who was distracted with anxious Thoughts, had heard his Prophecies, he desired to be informed of his own Fate, and the Issue of his Troubles. *Merdyn* no sooner heard what the King demanded, but he, in Compliance therewith, advised him to fly the Fire of the Sons of *Constantine*, who were then steering their Course towards *Britain*, in order to revenge the Death of their Father.

Ac-

manded *Merdyn* to tell him what it portended. Upon which *Merdyn* is said, to burst out in Tears, and deliver his Prophecies; after which *Vortiger* gave *Merdyn*, as a Recompence of his extraordinary Parts, the Kingdom of *West Wales*; which were the Lands belonging to his Grandfather, for his Mother was Daughter to the King of *Demetia*.

ACCORDINGLY the next Day arrived *Aurelius Ambrosius*, and his Brother, with an Army of Ten thousand Men, and being joined by the *Britons*, who flocked to him from all Parts, he resolved to attack *Vortiger* first, deeming it necessary to endeavour, before all Things, to free himself of that Enemy. To this End he put himself at the Head of his Troops, attended by the *British* Nobility, who with one Accord had acknowledged him for their Sovereign, and marched into *Kymry*, or *Wales* *, whether *Vortiger* had retired. *Ambrosius*, on his Arrival there, found that *Vortiger* had shut himself up in a strong Castle, which he instantly besieged, being determined not to let him escape. But as the Siege was like to detain him too long, he had Recourse to Fire, which meeting with some com-

*The Arms of
the Britons
are turned
against Vor-
tiger.*

* *Vortiger* desisting to build in *Eryri*, went into *Demetia*, and built, as *Ninnius* says, a strong Castle on the Banks of the River *Tywy*, which was afterwards called *Caervortigern*; others say, it was in *Urchinfield*, near the River *Wy*, on a Hill called *Clearius*.

combustible Matter, presently took Effect, ^{The Death} and ceased not to rage, till it was reduced ^{of Vortiger,} _{485.} to Ashes, and the unfortunate *Vortiger* perished in the Flames. Thus fell *Vortiger* in an advanced Age, after a Reign of near 40 Years in continual Troubles.

AMBROSIUS being thus freed from a very powerful Rival, renewed the War against the *Saxons*, which by the Diffensions among the *Britons* had been interrupted. His Valour had been sufficiently distinguished in *Gaul*, where he performed such great Exploits that they run ^{Ambrosius marches with his Army against Hengist.} through the whole Island: Wherefore the *Saxons* finding they were like to have so formidable an Adversary, thought fit to retire beyond the *Humber*, and fortify themselves in those Parts. *Ambrosius* no sooner received Intelligence of their Motions than he drew together his Forces, and advanced as expeditiously as he could towards the Northern Parts. As he marched along through the Countries, he could not look on the great Devastation made in them without a very great Concern; therefore he

he solemnly promised to repair all the Churches and publick Edifices, which, during the Wars, the *Saxons* had destroyed in case he proved victorious. *Hengist* seeing the *Britons* advance, took new Courage, and having selected out of his Army a Body of the stoutest Men, placed them in Ambush, in the Field called *Maisbeli*, through which the *Britons* were to pass. However, *Ambrosius*, who was well apprised of his Design, resolved to come to an Engagement. Accordingly, he advanced with all possible Expedition into the Plain, and drew up his Men in the best manner he could. He posted three thousand *Armoricans* to attend the Cavalry, and drew out the rest into the Line of Battle with the *Britons*; the *South-Wales* Men he placed on the rising Ground, and the *North-Wales* Men by the Side of a Wood; which when he had done, he attacked the Enemy with such Vigour that he obliged them to abandon their Post, and retire to the Town called *Caerconan*, now *Connisburgh* in *Yorkshire*. Thither

A Battle between them.

Am-

Ambrosius pursued them, and either killed or made Prisoners all he overtook.

HENGIST finding that he was closely pursued by *Ambrosius*, made what haste he could to rally his Troops, and to prepare them to stand another Engagement; for as the Town of *Caerconan* was not in a Condition to stand a Siege, he saw himself reduced to the Necessity of overcoming or perishing. *Ambrosius* soon came up with him, and renewed the Attack with great Vigour. Both Armies fought with very great Bravery for a considerable Time, without either gaining Ground; but at length the *Saxons* began to retire, after having lost a great Number of Men. The *Britons* even own they were once in no small Danger of being defeated, till a Party of Horse of the *Armorican Britons*, which *Ambrosius* had kept as a Body of Reserve, came to their Relief. During the Engagement, *Eldol* Duke of *Gloucester*, animated with an ardent Desire of Revenge, made several Attempts to encounter *Hengist*, but could find no Opportunity for it. As the

M

Saxons

Saxons retreated in good Order, *Hengist* was far from being discouraged at the ill Success of the two Engagements, that he resolved to make another Attempt. Accordingly he rally'd them, brought them back to the Charge and renew'd the Action. Here it was that *Eldol* who watched all Opportunities of engaging *Hengist*, at last found one, and advanced against him with great Ardour and Fury. The Combat proved long and doubtful, each signalizing himself in a very extraordinary manner. Whilst the Encounter was thus continued on both Sides with great Warmth, *Gorlois* Duke of *Cornwal* advanced with the Troops under his Command, and did great Execution on the Enemy. The Sight of him so elevated *Eldol*, that he fell like a Lion on *Hengist*, seized him by the Helmet and took him Prisoner, and then cried out in Transports of Joy, God has now accomplished my Desire! The Victory is ours, since *Hengist* is defeated, the Day is our own.

A Combat between Eldol Duke of Gloucester and Hengist.

Hengist is taken by him.

THE Saxons disheartned at this unfortunate Accident, began to give ground, and betake themselves to a disorderly Flight, some of them hastened to the Woods and Mountains, and others sought Refuge in the Cities and Ships. But the greatest Part of them withdrew to the Cities of *York* and *Dunbritton*, under the Conduct of *Osta* and *Ebusa*. *Ambrosius*, after he had obtained the Victory, seized the City of *Conan*, and remained there some time. While he was there he thought it necessary to call a Council of his principal Officers to consult together what to do with *Hengist*. At this Assembly was *Eldad* Bishop of *Gloucester*, Brother of *Eldol*; a Prelate of great Wisdom and Piety. He no sooner spy'd *Hengist* standing amongst them than he demanded Silence, and said, Tho' all the Members of the Assembly were unanimous for *Hengist* to be set at Liberty, yet would I cut him in Piece-meal, after the Example of the Prophet *Samuel*, who when *Agag* King of the *Amelekites* was brought before him, said, *As thy Sword hath made Women*
M 2 *childless,*

childless, so shall thy Mother be childless among Women, and then hew'd him in Pieces; do you therefore the very same to Hengist, who is a second Agag. Hereupon Eldol took his Sword and cut off his Head. After this Ambrosius march'd with his Army to besiege Osta, who, as was related, had retired to York. His Approach immediately determin'd Osta, who finding himself unable to withstand so powerful an Army, to throw himself on the Clemency of the King. This he accordingly did with so moving an Address, as made such Impression on Ambrosius, who was a Prince of a mild and benevolent Disposition, that he readily pardoned him. Ebusa, with the rest of the Fugitives, followed the Example of Osta, and had the Country bordering upon Scotland bestowed on them upon certain Terms.*

A. D. 489.
Hengist is be-
headed by El-
dol.

Osta and E-
busa submits.

Ambrosius ha-
ving reduced
his Enemies,
regulates both
Civil and Ec-
clesiastical Af-
fairs.

AMBROSIUS having now got the better of his Enemies, summon'd an Assembly

* The Saxon Writers will have Hengist to die a natural Death.

sembly of the Nobility at *York*, to settle the Affairs of the Kingdom. 'Tis said he undertook the rebuilding of the Metropolitan Church of that City, and other Cathedral Churches in that Province: from thence he went to *London* and *Winchester*, and gave strict Orders to re-edify those Churches, and repair all Damages sustained by the foregoing War. When by these Regulations he had provided for the Safety of the Church, he turned his Thoughts to the State, and revived many wholesome Laws for the due Administration of Justice. After this, he is said to go to *Salisbury* and cause *Stonehenge* to be erected to perpetuate the Memory of the Massacre of the *British* Nobles *.

WHILST

* As it has been justly wondered at, how such large Stones could be raised so high as they are, the Reader may probably be pleased to know Mr. Rowland's Hypothesis in his *Mona Antiqua*. Small Mounts were thrown up with sloping Sides, flatted and level'd at the Top. Up these sloping Sides with great Leavers and Pullies they gradually heaved and

Pascentius
Lord of Buellt
revolts.

WHILST *Ambrosius* was enjoying the Repose procured by his Victories, *Pascentius*, Son of *Vortiger*, who had fled into *Germany*, formed a Design of revenging his Father's Death, and recovering his Right to the *British* Throne. For that Purpose he privately formed a strong Party among the *Saxons*, promising them immense Treasures, in case he should succeed in his Pretensions. As soon as Matters were ripe, he sailed for *Britain* with a considerable Body of *Saxons*, and suddenly landed them in the Northern Parts of the Island. As his coming thither was wholly unexpected, he over-ran great Part of the Country

rolled up the Stones they designed to erect to the Top of the Mount, where laying them along, they dug Holes in the Earth at the End of the Stones, as deep as the Stones were long, into which they let them slide strait on Ends with their Tops level with the Tops of the Mounts; then placing other flat Stones upon these, and taking away the Earth almost to the Bottom of the Supporters, then there appeared what we call *Stonehenge* or *Cromlech*.

try without any Opposition. But as soon as *Ambrosius* heard of his Arrival, he drew all his Forces together, and marched with all Expedition to give him Battle, who, after a sharp Engagement was put to flight.

But is defeated by Ambrosius.

PASCENTIUS being driven out of *Britain*, and not caring to return back to *Germany*, steer'd his Course towards *Ireland*, to court the Protection of *Gillomanus* King of that Country. The Enumeration of his Misfortune made such an Impression on the King, that he soon gained him to his Interest. Accordingly he gave Orders for the fitting out a Fleet, in which he embarked for *Britain*, and landed his Troops at the City *Menevia*, now *St. Davids*.

Pascentius being assisted by the King of Ireland makes a Descent on Wales.

The News of the Descent of the *Irish* King with the young Prince, was quickly brought to *Ambrosius*, who was then seized with a Fit of Illness, at *Winchester*. Upon which, he sent to his Brother *Uther Pendragon*, enjoining him to march with all Expedition into *Cambria*, to give them Battle. In the mean time, the News of the King's In-

*He hires Eopa
a Saxon to kill
Ambrosius.*

disposition was immediately spread abroad, to the great Joy of *Pascentius*, and the *Saxons*, who now conceived great Hopes of becoming Masters of *Britain*. And while this Rumour was the Topick of publick Talk, one of the *Saxons*, *Eopa* by Name, came to *Pascentius*, and proffer'd his Service to kill *Ambrosius*. As he had some skill in Physick, and spoke the *British* Language like a Native, he undertook to procure his Death by Poison. *Pascentius* overjoy'd that he had met with so proper a Person, by which he might work his Revenge, immediately promised him an immense Sum of Money, and in case he acquired the Crown to make him a Duke. But before he engaged in such Iniquity, he required certain Terms, and made *Pascentius* swear to perform them. As soon as *Eopa* had received from *Pascentius* the Assurances he demanded, he immediately repaired to *Winchester*, under the Disguise of a Monk, loaded with Medicines. He was no sooner arriv'd there, but he went to the Palace, offering his Service and Skill to the

the King's Attendants, who received him with the utmost Respect.

FOR in the present Emergency no Person was more acceptable than a Physician. Hereupon he was immediately admitted to the King, whom he engaged to restore to Health, provided he would take his Portions; upon which *Ambrosius* ordered a Dose to be prepared, and administer'd to him.

ACCORDINGLY the treacherous *Saxon* presented him with one that was poisoned, pretending that it would infallibly recover him, which he no sooner drank, but the wicked Wretch, ordered him instantly to cover himself close up and fall asleep, to the End, that nothing might defeat the Operation and Force of the baneful Potion. The King readily complied with his ensnaring Advice, and thence conceiving speedy Relief and Recovery, fell asleep. So that the subtle Poison quickly diffused itself thro' all his Veins, and soon put an End to his

Ambrosius poisoned by Eopa;

his Life*. In the mean time the impious Traytor found Means to steal away, and could no where be found.

A Comet appears.

WHILST these things were transacting at *Winchester*, a Comet appeared; at the sight of which, *Uther*, who was then on his March to *Cambria*, could not help betraying great Concern and Uneasiness, it being looked upon by some People as an Omen portending the Death of Princes. Having apply'd to the famous *Merlin* who attended in this Expedition, to know what it meant. Upon this, *Merlin* is said to burst out in a flood of Tears, and to cry out, Oh, irretrievable Loss! Oh, distressed Britons! Alas! the renowned *Ambrosius* is dead! whose Death will prove our utter Ruin, if Providence be not propitious to us. Hasten therefore most noble *Uther*, make all the haste you can to engage the Enemy:

* Thus died that brave Prince, who deserved a better Fate. He was called by the Britons, *Emrys Wladic*.

Enemy : for you shall by a complete Victory secure the Crown to your self and Issue †.

BUT though *Uther* did not much depend upon the Prediction of *Merlin*, yet he continued his March towards *Kymry*, or *Wales*, in quest of the Enemy, and was advanced within a few Miles of *Menevia*.

WHEN Intelligence was brought to *Gillomanus* and the young Prince, that *Uther* was so near, they went out to meet him, and being come in sight of each other, they drew up their Armies in Order of Battle, whereon a sharp Engagement ensued, in which many fell on both Sides. But at length *Uther* got the better, and the Death of *Gillomanus* and *Pascentius* opened the way for a complete Victory. The *Barbarians* endeavoured to save themselves by flying to their Ships; but were taken and put to Death by the Pursuers. *Uther*, after

*Pascentius and
Gillomanus
are defeated
and slain.*

† *Prophetia Merlin. MSS.*

after having allowed his Army some Days of Rest, set out with the utmost Expedition for *Winchester*, for he had now received Advice of the King's Death, and of his Body being removed to the Convent of *Ambrius*, with the usual Ceremonies, and deposited within the Giants Dance, built by his Orders, where he had chosen to lie.

Uther Pendragon is elected Monarch.
A. D. 500.

ON the Death of *Ambrosius*, his Brother *Uther* * was with the general Approbation of the Nobility placed on the Throne. But he had not long enjoyed the Sovereign Power, when *Oëta* and *Ebusa*, conceiving themselves no longer bound by the Treaty which they had made with *Ambrosius*, began to raise Disturbances, and make an Ir-
ruption

* 'Tis said, that in order to keep up an Opinion which *Merlin* had predicted on seeing the Comet, he caused two Dragons to be made of Gold, which was greatly esteemed for the Workmanship. One he sent as a valuable Present to the Cathedral Church of *Winchester*; the other he reserved for himself, to be carried along with him as a Standard in Battle. Hence came he to be called *Uther Pendragon*.

ruption into his Countries. They thought this a happy Juncture, and that they ought not to let slip so favourable an Opportunity of reducing *Britain*. Full of this Intent, they sent to *Germany* for fresh Supplies, and entered the Northern Provinces, and cruelly ravaged all that Part of the Country.

UTHER, no sooner had Intelligence of these Devastations, than he drew together his Army, and marched with all Expedition to oppose them. The *Saxons* were then encamped before *York*, and had begun the Siege of that City. But as soon as they saw the *British* Army advancing towards them, they prepared for Battle, which they fought with such obstinate Valour, that the *Britons* were put to flight. The approach of the Night favouring their Retreat, they gained an Eminence at a little distance from the Field of Battle. Here *Uther* called a Council of War, in order to consult with his Chief Officers about the most proper Measures for attacking the Enemy. *Gorlois*, Duke of *Cornwal* was ordered

ordered to give his Opinion first, in regard both of his Age and Experience. He represented to them, " That the *Saxons* were " much superior to them in Number of " Men, and flushed with Success. That " by prolonging the Time they would find " no Advantage; whereas by favour of " the Night they might fall upon the Enemy by Surprise, and attack them unexpectedly in their Camp, which in all probability could not fail of Success." This Advice was received with Joy by the King and his Officers, who unanimously determined to put it in Execution. Accordingly they advanced towards the Enemies Camp with a Design to make a General Assault. But as they drew near, they were discovered by the Watch, who by Sound of Trumpet roused their Companions, and spread the Alarm over the whole Camp. The Enemy were so surprized and frighten'd at this sudden and unexpected Attack, that some ran one Way, and some another.

Uther beats
the Saxons.

THE

The Britons taking Advantage of the Enemy's Fears, broke into their Camp, fell upon them Sword in Hand, and made a great Slaughter of them. *Oëta* and *Ebusa*, their chief Commanders, were made Pri- *Oëta and Ebusa taken in Battle.* soners, and some Thousands of the *Barbarians* were left dead upon the Spot.

AFTER this important Victory, *Uther* *Uther goes to Scotland.* enjoyed a profound Quiet for some Time. He took the Opportunity of this Tranquility to visit *Scotland*, and settle the Affairs of that Kingdom. After he had caused Justice and Peace to flourish in the *Northern* Provinces, he returned to *London*, and ordered *Oëta* and *Ebusa* to be confined in Prison there. Here he summoned all the Nobility of the Kingdom to celebrate the great Feast of *Easter*; during which Festival he kept a splendid Court, and magni- *Returns to London, and makes a great Entertainment.* ficently entertained all his Nobility *.

IN

* Among these was present *Gorlois* Duke of *Cornwal*, with his Wife *Igern*a. As this Princess was the most beautiful Woman in *Britain*,
the

IN Process of Time the King was seized with a tedious Indisposition, and it happened

the King no sooner cast his Eyes upon her, than he conceived a most violent Passion for her. During the whole Time of the Entertainment, he was wholly taken up with the Thoughts of the beautiful *Igern*, and solely intent on pleasing and diverting her. *Gorlois*, who was passionately fond of his Wife, was not so short of Penetration, but he well saw the Danger he was in, of losing the chief Object of his Delight. Swell'd with Indignation at these Thoughts, he hastily rose up, and left the Court. And in order to prevent her having any Conversation with the King, he took Care to convey her to a Place of Security, called *Tintagel*, a Maritime Town in *Cornwall*; whence with a heavy Heart he retired to the Castle of *Dinlot*, that so they might not both be at once involved in one Misfortune. The King highly incensed at this Opposition, and resolved to be revenged on the Duke, carried Fire and Sword into his Country, and afterwards laid close Siege to the Town where *Gorlois* was. All the Avenues were guarded by strong Detachments, so that neither Supplies could be received, nor any of the Inhabitants find a Way out. While the King was thus carrying on the Siege, he felt no Quiet in his Mind,

pened about the same time, that *Oëta* and *Ebusa* had made their Escape, and fled over into *Germany* with the Keepers of the Prison, where they were raising a numerous Army, with a Design to reduce the Island. And accordingly News was soon after brought

Oëta and Ebusa make their Escape, and renew the War.

Mind, the Charms of the beautiful *Igernæ* were still before his Eyes, and her lovely Image in his Heart. He could not by Diversion drive her out of his Thoughts; he could not satisfy his Desires, nor he could not live without her. Therefore he at last resolved to reveal the Situation of his Mind, to his intimate Friend *Ulfen*, who advised him to apply to the Prophet *Merlin*, and if he could gain him to his Interest, he could not miss that Success which he desired in his Amour. And as the Story goes, *Merdyn* was accordingly sent for, by whose Art the King found Means to get Admittance to *Igernæ*, and had unlawful Commerce with her in the Shape of *Gorlois*; or rather, to cover the foulness of the Crime, *Merdyn* is said to change *Uiber* into the Likeness of her Husband *Gorlois*. In the mean time the Duke, upon the first sally that was made from the Town, was unfortunately killed, and *Igernæ* was soon after married to the King, by whom he had a Son and Daughter, whose Names were *Arthur* and *Anne*.

brought the King, of their Descent, and ravaging the *Northern* Parts in a terrible manner. Whereupon *Uther* immediately sent Orders for his Army to march, under the Conduct of *Lot* Earl of *Leil*, and stop their Career. *Lot*, called by the *Britons*, *Llew ap Cynfarch*, had married the King's Daughter, and was entrusted with the whole Management of the War, during the King's Indisposition: This War was carried on with various Success, sometimes the *Britons*, and at other times the *Saxons* prevailing. But what most of all contributed to the ill Success of this Expedition, was the *Britons* being very much dissatisfied with their new Commander, and paying too little Regard to his Orders.

By this Conduct, the Country was exceedingly ravaged by the *Saxons*, of which when the King received Intelligence, it provoked him so highly, that he instantly ordered his Nobility to appear before him. They had scarce entered into his Presence, but he flew into a violent Passion, reproaching them with having sacrificed the publick

lick Good to their Pride and Ambition; protesting at the same time, that, Old and Feeble as he was, he determined at all Events to head his Army in Person. And to this End, he ordered a Litter to be immediately made, in which he designed to be carried, and gave Orders to all his Nobility to hold themselves in readiness to march the very first Opportunity. This Resolution was no sooner taken, than they marched directly to *Verulam*, now *St. Albans*, where the *Britons* were greatly harassed by the *Saxons*.

Uther being indisposed, is carried in a Litter against the Enemy.

WHEN *Oëta* and *Ebusa* heard of the Approach of the *British* Army, and how the King was carried in a Litter, they turned disdainfully from him, and scorned to fight him, saying, that it would be a Disgrace to such warlike People, should they fight with one, that was half dead. Whereupon they withdrew into the City, and greatly contemning the *Britons*, left both the Gates and Walls unguarded. Which *Uther* no sooner heard, but he ordered the City to be instantly invested,

and the Walls to be assaulted on all Sides, which they accordingly did, with such Resolution, that they had made a large Breach in the Wall, and were on the point of entering the City; when the *Saxons* seeing the Advantages, which the *Britons* had already gained over them, were forced to change their Language, and abate somewhat of that Haughtiness they had hitherto shewn, and betake themselves to Arms.

THEY ran in Crowds to the Ramparts, from whence they discharged such Showers of Darts, that the *Britons* were obliged to retire. However, they often renew'd the Attack, and kept the Victory doubtful all that Day. But Night coming on, they retired to refresh and repose themselves after so fatiguing a Combat. In the mean time, the *Saxons* foreseeing the Danger that was likely to befall them from their own imprudent Conduct, thought it adviseable to quit the City, and to try the Chance of an Engagement in the open Field, which they accordingly did; for as soon as it was Light they march'd out to meet the Enemy,

*He beats the
Saxons.*

my, which the *Britons* no sooner saw, than they drew up their Troops in Battalia, and charged the *Saxons* with great Vigour: The Engagement lasted almost the whole Day, many falling on both Sides, but at last, *Octa* and *Ebusa* being killed, the *Saxons* betook themselves to flight. The King was so transported at the good Success of his Army, that he forgot his Illness, sat upright in his Litter, and out of the Abundance of his Joy burst out in Laughter, and said, These Barbarians called me the half dead King, because my Indisposition obliged me to be carried in a Litter; however Victory to me half dead is more eligible than a Defeat sound and healthy; for to die a glorious Death is preferable to a Life without Honour. The *Saxons* finding they could prevail little by Force, had Recourse to Fraud. They formed a Design against the Old King's Life, and because they could have no Access to him, they determined to procure his Death by poisoning a certain Fountain which the King used to drink of during his Illness. Accordingly Poison was prepared and pour'd in, of such

Octa and Ebusa slain.

Uther *prisoned*
by the Saxons.

Ene gy and Quickness, that the next time the King drunk of it he expired soon after, as did several other Persons who happen'd to drink of it, till the Iniquity was discovered, and the Fountain blocked up. No sooner was the King's Death made publick, but the Bishops, and the rest of the Clergy assembled, and caused his Body to be convey'd to the Convent of *Ambrius*, where they bury'd it with the usual Pomp and Magnificence, near *Aurelius Ambrosius*, within the Giant's Dance, in the Year of our Lord 517.

Arthur crown-
ed King, and
besieges Col-
grin.

UPON the Death of *Uther Pendragon*, all the Nobility assembled at *Silcester*, and propos'd to *Dubritius*, Archbishop of *Caerleon*, that he should consecrate *Arthur*, *Uther's* Son, for their King; for they were now under great Apprehension of Danger from the *Saxons*, who upon the first News of the King's Death had sent to *Germany* for fresh Supplies, which were already arriv'd under the Conduct of *Colgrin*, and were ravaging all the Northern Provinces. *Dubritius* being extremely concerned at
the

the Calamities of his Country, readily joined the other Bishops, to set the Crown upon *Arthur's* Head. Though he was then but in the fifteenth Year of his Age, he had shewed uncommon Marks of Courage and Strength. On account therefore of his extraordinary Valour, Sweetness of Temper, and generous Behaviour, he was greatly admired, and highly esteemed by all. He had no sooner ascended the Throne than he began to draw together his Army, and march against the *Saxons*, and repay them those Injuries, Insults, and Ravages which they had committed on the *Britons*. As soon as *Colgrin* had notice of this, he hastened to meet him with a great Army, consisting of *Saxons*, *Scots*, and *Picts*. They came in view of each other near the River *Celed*, where a sharp Engagement ensued, which ended wholly to the Advantage of the *Britons*; for *Colgrin* was put to flight, and forced to shut himself up in *York*.* Thither *Arthur* pursued

N 4

him,

* This is the fifth Battle which *Arthur* is said to have fought with the *Saxons* and come off

him, and closely besieged him. Upon the News of his Defeat, his Brother *Baldulph*, who was then on the Sea Coast, waiting the Arrival of *Cerdic*, hastened to the Relief of the besieged City.

*Cador beats
the Saxons.*

ARTHUR, in the mean time, being informed of his Motions, detached six hundred Horse and three thousand Foot, under the Command of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal* to meet him. *Cador* no sooner discovered the Enemy, but he fell on them
so

off victorious. The first was fought near the River *Gleni* or *Gledy*; the second and third at *Douglas*, and obliged *Colgrin* to fly into *Wigan*; the fourth further in *Lancashire*.

It is reported, that *Howel* King of *Areclute*, and Brother of *Gildas*, looking with jealous Eyes on the Glory *Arthur* had acquir'd, made an Alliance against him with the *Saxons* of the North. But instead of lessening his Fame, he gave him an Opportunity of signalizing himself and adding to it considerably. *Arthur* having driven him to the Isle of *Anglesey*, gave him battle, and slew him with his own Hand. He gain'd this Victory when he was about 18 Years old.

so vigorously and so unexpectedly, that the Saxons, struck with Terror, betook themselves to flight. The Army was so dispersed, that *Baldulph* did not know which way to turn himself, or what Measures to pursue. At last he bethought himself of the following Stratagem. He cut off his Hair and Beard, and dressed himself like a Harper, and in that Disguise passed thro' the Enemy's Troops, and got safe to the Walls of *York*, where making himself known to the Soldiers on the Ramparts, they threw him down a Rope, and so drew him up the Wall. The Tydings he brought of *Cerdic's* Design of coming into *Britain* with powerful Succours, re-animated the Besieged, and made them continue their Defence with great Resolution. *Arthur* exerted his utmost Endeavours to take the Place before the Arrival of the *Saxon* Prince. *Cador*, in the mean time, was posted in *Norfolk*, that he might be ready to oppose the landing of the *Saxons*. But before *Arthur* had made any considerable Progress towards the Reduction of the Place, he received the ill News of the Arrival of

Cerdic arrives.

the *German Fleet*, consisting of six hundred Sail, on the Coast of *Scotland*. Hereupon he called a Council of War in order to determine whether they should pursue the Siege, or no. All the Commanders were for raising the Siege and retiring to some Place of Safety, till they could have an exact Account of the Number of the Forces lately landed, for a Report was spread that they were innumerable. *Arthur* being dissuaded from continuing the Siege, retired to *London*, where he assembled the Nobility in order to consult about the Measures they should take in this Posture of Affairs. After some Deliberation it was unanimously resolved, that Embassadors should be sent to *Hoel King of Armorica* to desire his Assistance.

Arthur raises the Siege.

Arthur assisted by the King of Armorica.

HOEL overjoy'd at an Opportunity of being serviceable to his Uncle, soon brought him a Supply of fifteen thousand Men, which he landed at *Southampton*. This Reinforcement enabled *Arthur* to march against the *Saxons*, and meeting them at a Place called *Deira*, he fell upon them

them with such Vigour, that the *Saxons*, not able to stand the Shock, betook themselves to flight. After this Victory, *Arthur* made all the the haste he could to *Lincoln*, whither the Remains of the Enemy's Army had fled, to join their Countryman *Cerdic*, who was at that time carrying on the Siege of that City. His March was so expeditious, that he came upon the Enemy sooner than they expected, fell upon and routed them with very great Slaughter; for six thousand *Saxons* were either cut in Pieces, or drowned in the River, and *Cerdic* himself obliged to take Shelter in the Forest of *Celidon* *.

He defeats the Saxons and makes them Tributaries.

ARTHUR having thus driven the *Saxons* to the Woods, was resolv'd to keep them there in a manner besieg'd till he could reduce them by Famine. The *Sax-*

ons

* *Merdyn* tells us, that *Arthur* lost an hundred and forty brave Men in the Wood of *Celidon*, who all fell into an Ambush.

ons being thus shut up in the Forest, were fore pressed by Famine, and seeing no Hopes of being relieved, they begg'd Leave to come out, offering to give up all things, pay an annual Tribute, and return back to *Germany*. To this *Arthur* agreed; and the *Saxons* accordingly embark'd with a Design to perform the Agreement; but they had not sailed far before they chang'd their Minds, weigh'd Anchor, then sail'd back to *Britain*, and landed at *Totness*. Since *Cerdic's* Overthrow, all the *Saxons* found themselves under a Necessity of exerting their utmost Power to put a Stop to the Progress of *Arthur*, who tho' yet a Youth, equall'd the oldest Generals in Valour and Prudence. The Terror he had struck in them made them resolve to unite all their Forces, and use their utmost Efforts to retrieve their Affairs.

Great Preparations made on the Side of the *Saxons* and *Britons*.

THEY named on this Occasion four Generals, viz. *Escus*, *Ella*, *Cerdic*, and *Porta*. While the *Saxons* were thus employ'd in making vast Preparations; the *Britons* were not wanting on their Side

Side to raise all the Forces they were able, that they might defend themselves against so powerful an Enemy; so that it was thought a general Action would soon ensue, which was to decide the Fate either of the one State or other. But *Arthur*, in the mean time, having Intelligence that *Baldulph* and *Colgrin* were committed great Devastations in the Western Parts, march'd after them with the utmost Diligence, and came up with them near a Place called *Gainsford*, where an obstinate Engagement ensued, in which *Arthur* still came off victorious; yet they had the Courage to venture another Engagement near *Cadbury* in *Somerſetſhire*, where they had no better Success. *Cerdic* being in the interim reinforced, invested and attacked the City of *Bath*, which gave *Baldulph* and *Colgrin* an Opportunity of joining him. His Army was now become so numerous, that he wished the *Britons* would either venture a Battle or raise the Siege; he obtained his Desire, for *Arthur*, full of Resentment for the Perfidiousness of *Cerdic*, was determin'd, at all Events, to give him
battle

*The Battle of
Badon Hill,
520.*

battle, which proved the sharpest and most bloody that ever had been fought between the two Nations *. It lasted from Noon till Night, without any considerable Advantage on either Side. Both Armies kept under Arms with intent to renew the fight at Break of Day; but the *Saxons*, taking the Advantage of the Darkeness of the Night, posted themselves on a small Hill called *Bannes-down*, which, tho' overlook'd by both Parties the Day before, was of vast Advantage. As soon as Day began to appear, *Arthur* perceiving the advantageous Situation of the Enemy, resolved to dislodge them, which he accordingly did, after a sharp and obstinate Fight. The *Britons*, tho' they fought with all the Disadvantage imaginable, yet being animated by

* The *Saxon* Annals tell us, that about this Time, a Battle was fought between the *Britons* and *Saxons* near a Place call'd *Cerdic's Ford*, wherein a *British* King named *Nazaleod* was slain, and 5000 *Britons* with him; but *Nazaleod*, or *Nathaliad* was only a *British* Commander.

by the Presence and Bravery of their King, continued fighting with an amazing Resolution, climbing up the Hill under Showers of Darts, and in Spite of all Opposition gained the Top of it.

ARTHUR having gained the Summit of the Hill, now advanced against the Saxons on even Ground, and to re-animate his Troops by his own Example, he rushed into the midst of his Enemies, and fell upon them with such Fury, that they were obliged to abandon the Hill and betake themselves to flight. *Arthur*, on this Occasion, gained a most complete Victory, having killed four hundred and seventy with his own Hand *; *Cerdic* had the good luck to escape, but *Baldulph* and *Colgrin* were both slain.

AN unexpected Event robbed *Arthur* of an Opportunity to pursue the Advan- tage

The Picts make a Diversion in the North.

* *Malsbury* says, *Arthur* slew four hundred with his own Hand.

tage of his Victory. The *Scots* and *Picts* at this Time in Alliance with the *Saxons*, knowing *Arthur* to be at a Distance, and his Nephew *Hoel* taken ill at *Areclute*, now *Dunbritton*, resolved to lay siege to that Town, hoping to take it, before any Succours could come to its Relief. But *Arthur* was too nimble for them; he having detached *Cador* with ten thousand Men in pursuit of *Cerdic*, while himself marched with the utmost Expedition to the Assistance of *Hoel*, for whom he was in great Pain. But *Cador* in order to prevent *Cerdic*'s making his Escape, thought it advisable, first to secure all the *Saxon* Vessels. Accordingly he proceeded with all possible Expedition towards the Sea Coast, and made himself Master of the Enemy's Transports, and after leaving some chosen Men to guard them, he set out in quest of *Cerdic*, and having gained Intelligence which Way he took, pressed him so close, that he was obliged to retire to the Isle of *Thanet*, whither *Cador* pursued him, and fell upon him with such Fury, that *Cerdic* was immediately killed upon the Spot, and the

*Cador pursues
Cerdic to the
Isle of Thanet,
and there kills
him.*

*And after-
wards goes to
Scotland.*

poor

poor Remains of his shattered Forces, surrendered at Discretion.

CADOR having thus defeated the Saxons, and settled Peace and Security to the Britons, posted away to *Areclute*, which *Arthur* had relieved from the Oppression of the Scots and Picts. On his Arrival there he was informed, that *Arthur* had left that City some Days before, and was gone to besiege *Murcis*, now *Murray*, to which Place the Scots and Picts had retired.

THE Scots and Picts defended themselves for some time with great Valour, but being at last overpowered with Numbers, were forced to retire into the strong Holds of *Lough Lomond*, whither *Arthur* they thought, as the Lake was no where fordable, could not pursue them. But no Difficulties were unsurmountable to that Conqueror, who having gathered together some Boats, and manned them with Soldiers, he ordered them to surround them, and coop them up, while he encamped with

Arthur defeats the Scots and Picts, and Ravages their Country.

the main Body of the Army near the Lake. By this Means the *Scots* and *Picts* were reduced to such Distress for want of Provisions, that they died by Thousands.

WHILE they were thus oppressed, *Guillamurius* King of *Ireland*, came with a great Army to their Assistance, so that *Arthur* was forced to decamp, and turn his Arms against the *Irish*, whom he intirely defeated, and cut most of them in Pieces. After this Victory, he renewed his Attempt, which was to have extirpated the whole Race of the *Scots* and *Picts*. The Stop which this Diversion put to his intended pursuit of the *Saxons*, provoked him to such a degree, that he laid waste their Country from one End to another, and would have entirely destroyed it, had not the Bishops, and the rest of the Clergy, implored his Clemency, and by their Intercession prevailed upon him to desist.

*He restores
York to its an-
cient Splendor.*

AND now *Arthur* having no more Enemies to contend with in the North, returned to *York*, where he staid some time

to celebrate the Feast of *Christ's* Nativity, which was then approaching. At the same time he made it his Business to rectify the Disorders introduced by the late War, both in Church and State; to repair all the Churches, and to restore the Nobility to their ancient Possessions*.

ARTHUR still retaining in Mind the *Irish* King's coming to the Assistance of the *Scots*, fitted out a great Fleet, and made an Expedition into *Ireland*. On his arrival, he was met by the King at the head of a great Number of Men, who came with a Design to oppose his Landing. But as they were naked, and without Armour, they were routed at the very first Onset,

And afterwards makes an Expedition into Ireland.

O 2 and

* He appointed his Chaplain *Pyramus* to succeed *Sampson*, Archbishop of that See. He restored *Augustus* to the Sovereignty of *Scotland*, his Brother *Urien* to the Kingdom of *Murray*, and *Lot* to the Consulship of *Lodneis*, and the other Provinces in *Pitland*. *Arthur* having thus restored and entirely settled Affairs, married *Guanbumaru*, who was a Descendant of a Noble Family in *Cornwal*.

The HISTORY of

and their King *Guillamurius* taken Prisoner.

*Reduces it,
and returns
to Britain,
where he
makes several
Regulations.*

ARTHUR becoming, by this Victory, Master of the whole Field, set sail for the *Orkneys* *, steering his Course through the *Western Islands*; all which voluntarily submitted to the Conqueror, each of them making Peace with the King upon the best Terms they could.

ARTHUR having ended his Expedition with such Success, return'd to *Britain*, where he was received with great Joy. The first Thing he did after his Return, was to quiet the Minds of the People, and put

* The Isles of *Orkney* lie North of *Caithness*, in the Latitude of 59 and 60 Degrees. The Largest of them is *Mainland*, anciently *Pomonia*, 24 Miles long, whereon stands a Town call'd *Kirkwal*, famous for *St. Magnus's* Church, and the Bishop of *Orkney's* Palace. These Isles were first inhabited by the *Picts*, who kept Possession of them till destroyed by *Keneth* the 2d, King of *Scotland*.

put an end to those civil Dissentions occasioned by his Absence. And the *Britons* enjoyed a State of profound Tranquility, which lasted twelve Years; *Arthur* employing himself entirely in causing Justice and Peace to flourish, and rendering his Subjects happy.

BUT these pacifick Employments not at all suiting the warlike Temper of *Arthur*, he formed a Design of bringing all *Europe* to an absolute Subjection. Accordingly he equipped a good Number of Ships, put to Sea, and made a Descent on the *Norwegians*, in favour of *Lot* † his Sister's Husband. Upon his entering *Norway* he was met by *Riculf*, at the Head of a powerful Army, who gave him Battle. The first Onset was very furious, and the Success a long time doubtful, but at last

*He subdues
Norway, and
Dacia.*

O 3

† This *Lot* was the Nephew of *Sybelin* King of *Norway*, who on his Death-bed appointed him to succeed him in the Kingdom. But the *Norwegians* disdaining to acknowledge him, had placed one *Riculf* on the Throne.

the *Britons* behaving with great Resolution, prevailed, killing many, among whom was *Riculf* himself. *Arthur* having thus reduced the *Norwegians*, and placed *Lot* on the Throne, he set sail directly for *Gaul* ||, to assist his Nephew *Hoel*, who was extremely disturbed by one *Flollo*, or as others call him, *Frollon*, Governour of a *Roman* Province in those Parts.

He was no sooner arrived in *Gaul*, but he sent out Detachments to lay waste the Country, and some of these coming up with *Flollo*, engaged and routed him. The Candour and Generosity of *Arthur*, drew many of the *Gauls* to side with him, so that *Flollo* seeing the Disadvantages he lay under, retired with a small Body to *Paris*, where he strengthened the Garrison, and resolved to defend to the utmost of his Power the City against the victorious *Britons*. Hereupon *Arthur* instantly invested the

|| The *British* Chronicle tells us, that he also invaded *Dacia*, and reduced it.

the City; but the Besieged made such a vigorous Defence, that he was obliged to turn the Siege into a Blockade, in Hopes of reducing it by Famine. By this Means they were reduced to great Straits; hence when *Flollo* seeing no Hopes of Relief, and being ready to perish with Want, sent a Message to *Arthur*, proposing that an End should be put to the Dispute by a single Combat between them two. For as he was a Person of an extraordinary Size, Strength and Courage, he flattered himself, that Victory would soon incline to his Side. *Arthur* received the Proposal with Joy, and prepared himself to appear in the List. Never was there before seen a Combat between two Persons, so furious, and at the same time so artfully managed, or followed with that Vigour and Impetuosity. But *Arthur* thinking to make an End of the Combat at once, united all his Strength, and rising to the Stroke, gave so furious a Blow upon the Crest of *Flollo's* Helmet, as wounded him very deep in the Head. *Flollo* stunned with that last Effort, fell down, and soon expired. The News

*He kills
Flollo, and
reduces Gaul.*

of this Victory soon reached the Citizens, who opened their Gates, and put *Arthur* in Possession of the City. After this Victory, he thought fit to divide his Forces into two Bodies, appointing *Hoel* to be Commander of the one, and to march against *Guitard*, General of the *Pictavians* *, while he with the other Body endeavoured to reduce the other Provinces.

And Aquitain.

HOEL, pursuant to his Orders, entered *Aquitain*, took many Cities, and obliged *Guitard*, whom he overthrew in several Battles, to surrender. After having subdued the *Pictavians*, he entered *Gascony*, and wasted the whole Country, putting all to Fire and Sword. *Arthur* having thus reduced all *Gaul*, returned to *Paris*, where he spent the remainder of the Winter in redressing Grievances, and appointing Governours of the several Provinces.

MATTERS

* *Poitou*, a Part of the Province of *Orleans*.

MATTERS being thus settled, and Peace established throughout all the Parts of *Gaul*, *Arthur* returned about the Beginning of the Spring to *Britain*, after a nine Years Absence.

BUT whilst he was giving his Nephew *Hoel* Assistance, and other Marks of his Affection, his Absence proved very prejudicial to his Country. The *Angles* arrived in *Britain*, and made a great Irruption into the Country, which had he been at home, would certainly have been prevented. The *Saxons* at the same time laying hold on the Advantage of the King's Absence, and of the Assistance they might have from the *Angles*, broke the Treaty, and made new Acquisitions. So that *Arthur* on his Return, found his Affairs in extreme Disorder, as well by the new Conquests which the *Saxons* had made, as also by the Arrival of the *Angles*. But as he was not in a Condition to renew the War, with Enemies, who every Day encreased upon him, he thought it more adviseable to enter into

The Arrival of the Angles.

Arthur makes a Treaty with the Saxons.

Arthur elected
Monarch.

a new Treaty of Peace with the Saxons. Not long after this Treaty, he is said to assume the Imperial Purple, and to be crowned with great Solemnity at *Caerleon*, upon the River *Uſke*, then in the Country of *Morganwe* *. 'Tis said, that, towards the

* This Coronation was celebrated on the Feast of Pentecost, with the utmost Pomp and Magnificence at *Caerleon*, this City being thought most proper for that Purpose, both on account of its Grandeur and pleasant Situation, being on one side watered by the great River *Severn*, and on the other side adorned with shady Trees and fruitful Meadows. In it were many stately Edifices, and two collegiate Churches, the one dedicated to *Julius* the Martyr, having in it a Nunnery, and the other dedicated to *St. Aaron*, his Companion, maintaining a Convent of Canons, and was the third Metropolitan Church of *Britain*. There was besides, a College of two hundred Philosophers, who apply'd themselves to the Study of Astrology. To this Feast were invited not only the Nobility of *Britain*, but also of all the Islands and Countries which *Arthur* had subdued; as *Goran* King of *Scotland*, *Augusel* King of the *Attacotti*, i. e. a Nation in *Scotland*. *Urien* King of *Reget*, *Cadwallo*, commonly called *Caswallaun Llaw-*

the Conclusion of the Solemnity, certain
Embassadors arrived at Court, with a Letter

bir, King of North-Wales, Menryc King of South-Wales, Cador King of Cornwall, the Archbishop of London, York, and Caerleon, Morydd Earl of Gloucester, Mawron Earl of Worcester, Anarawd Earl of Shrewsbury, Gwrsalem Earl of Chichester, Owen Earl of Caerleon, now Chester, Maribud of Warwick, Urien of Bath, Roso of Rydychen, now Oxford, Danawad ap Pato, Cenau ap Coel, Peridyr ap Eliayr, Kyngor ap Angan, Kunvelin ap Tyngat, Cariel ap Cadell, with many others too tedious to mention. From the adjacent Islands came Gillamer King of Ireland; Lot or Llew ap Kynfarch King of Norway, and the Kings of Island, Gotbland, Denmark, Orkney, and Ruteni; the Dukes of Normandy, Angiou and Poitieu, twelve Peers of Gaul whom Gereint Garanwys brought along with him.

Hoel, King of Armorica, came with all his Nobility, and a great Train of Mules and Horses caparisoned with rich Furniture. All the Nobility being thus assembled, the Archbishops were called to place the Crown on King Arthur's Head, and because it was in the Diocese of Dubritius, he was order'd to perform the Ceremony. As soon as the King was invested with the Ensigns of Royalty, he was conducted in great Pomp to the Cathedral Church

*A Letter sent
him by Lucius
Tiberius.*

ter from *Lucius Tiberius*, General of the
Romans, which contained an Account of
the

Church, being supported by two Archbishops, the Kings of *Scotland*, *Cornwal*, *North-Wales*, and *South-Wales*, each carrying a Golden Sword before the King. The Queen *Guenbyfar* was conducted by the other Archbishop, and the rest of the Bishops to the Church of *St. Julius*, and the Queens of those Kings who carried the golden Swords, bearing each a white Dove before the Queen, and were followed by a great Number of Women of Quality, giving all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy. The Procession over, they enter'd the Churches, wherein was a great Harmony both of vocal and instrumental Musick. The Service over, the King and Queen put off their Royal Robes, return to the Palaces to Dinner, for they had separate Palaces for the Men, and for the Women, according to an ancient Custom used among the *Britons* on all Festivals. As soon as the Banquets were over, they went into the Fields to divert themselves with publick Sports, Tournaments, and all sorts of Diversions were encouraged of three Days Continuance; and all these ended with the Conqueror receiving a Reward from the King. On the fourth Day, *Arthur* gratified his Nobles, and fill'd up all Vacancies both in Church and State. But *Dubritius* desirous to

spend

the many Injuries which *Arthur* had done the Empire, viz. how he had, to gratify his Ambition, entered the *Roman* Provinces, made War unjustly on the *Allobroges*, and made himself Master of those Islands, whose Kings were Tributaries to the *Romans*. That he likewise detained the Tribute which used to be paid to the *Roman* Emperors from *Britain*. So cites him to appear before the Senate, and answer for his Conduct. After *Arthur* had paused some time upon what he had read, he summoned all the Kings and Noblemen to be present at the reading of the Letter, which highly provoked the King, as being unused to such haughty Messages. The Council being no less exasperated at the Insolence of *Lucius*, than the King, persuaded him to enter the *Roman* Empire with a powerful Army, all the Princes promising to join him as soon as he arrived in *Gaul*, and to

They consult about an Answer.

spend his last Days in Contemplation, resigned his Archiepiscopal Dignity, and *David*, the King's Uncle, was consecrated in his room.

put him in Possession of the Empire. *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall* pleasantly said on this Occasion, That he began to fear, that the *Britons* would suffer their Martial Genius to rust, and exchange their war-like Way of Living, for an indolent one, but now he hoped they should soon have Occasion to signalize themselves against the *Romans*, and re-establish the Glory of the *British* Name.

ARTHUR finding all unanimously resolved to assist him, laid hold of this Opportunity to vent his Resentment against the *Romans*. And accordingly desired the Kings and Noblemen to return to their respective Countries, in order to get ready the Forces which they had promised, and make all the haste they could to the Place of Rendezvous. They were no sooner departed, but the King dismissed the Embassadors with this harsh Message, viz. To tell their Master, that he designed to come soon to *Rome*, to demand of him what he pretended was due from *Britain*. Having with this Answer dismissed the Embassa-

dors, he drew all his Forces together, and marched at the Head of them to *Hamo's Port*, now *Southampton*, where he embarked *, and crossed over to the Continent,

* It is said, that while the Fleet was under Sail, it happen'd that *Arthur* about Midnight, fell into sound sleep, and as he slept he had this Dream. He thought he saw a Bear flying in the Air, which made such a dreadful Noise, as caused the very Shores to quake; at the same time a terrible Dragon flying from the West, which enlighten'd the Country with the dazling Splendor of its Eyes. These two meeting began a fierce and terrible Combat. But the Dragon with its fiery Breath, burnt the Bear, which often attack'd him, and at last cast him down, scorch'd to the Ground. *Arthur* no sooner awaked, than he communicated his Dream to his Attendants, who took upon them to interpret it; and accordingly they told him, that the Dragon signified himself, and the Bear some Giant that should encounter with him. But it seems, *Arthur* understood it quite otherwise, and thought it more applicable to the Emperor and himself.

The Chronicle adds, that *Arthur* in this Expedition, killed a *Spanish* Giant of a monstrous size, who infested the Parts of *Gaul*, and had carried off *Helena*, Neice to Duke *Hoel*, to the Top of Mount *Michael*.

The HISTORY of

ment, landing his Forces at the Mouth of the River *Albys*, and there formed a strong Encampment. As this War would in all Probability keep him some time abroad, he left the Government of the Kingdom in the Hands of the Queen his Consort, assisted by his Nephew *Modred*.

SHORTLY after each appearing with his Troops at the general Rendezvous, they all marched from thence to *Augustodunum*, and from *Augustodunum* to the River *Albys*.

HERE they were informed, that the Roman General at the Head of a formidable Army, was not far off; whereupon they encamped on the Banks of the River, being resolved to expect the Enemy in that Place. In the mean time, *Arthur* sent *Bose*, Earl of *Oxford* and *Geraint Garan-wys* with his Nephew *Galgan* to *Lucius* the Roman General, requiring him either to quit *Gaul*, or come the next Day, that they might decide their Dispute about it, in a general Engagement. *Lucius* returned
in

in answer, that he was not come to retire, but to govern the Country. He had scarce delivered this Answer, when his Nephew *Gaius Quintilianus* said with an insulting air, that the *Britons* were better at boasting and threatening, than they were at fighting. *Galgan* was so provoked at this, that he instantly fell upon him Sword in hand, and slew him. The *Romans* seeing their Countryman fallen, would soon have revenged his Death on *Galgan*, had not his brave Companions rescued him from the Danger, by burying their Spears in the Bodies of the Pursuers. However the *Romans* continued their Pursuit till they approached a certain Wood, where a Body of six thousand *Britons* lay concealed. These sallying out unexpectedly, fell so briskly on the Enemy, that they were forced to retire.

AND while the *Britons* were pursuing the Fugitives with great Slaughter, *Petreius* the Senator, arrived very seasonably at the Head of ten thousand Men, revived the Courage of the *Romans*, and facing about

hout, compelled the *Britons* to retire. But in their Retreat they were joined by *Hider*, at the Head of five thousand Men. The *Britons* being encouraged by this Reinforcement, renewed the Attack with great Vigour. The first Onset was very furious, and the Success some time doubtful; for so great was the Skill of *Petreius Cotta*, the *Roman* Commander, in the military Science, that he far surpassed the *British* Generals in drawing up an Army, making an Attack opportunely, or judging when to retreat. This Advantage *Boso* observed, who thereupon drew aside a strong Body of choice Troops, and made them the following Speech; “ As we have been induced
 “ to venture a Battle unknown to *Arthur*,
 “ let us behave in it with Bravery and
 “ Caution. For if the Enemy should get
 “ the better of us, it would not only prove
 “ destructive to our Troops, but also ex-
 “ ceedingly incense the King, who would
 “ very much blame our Conduct on this
 “ Occasion: Exert therefore all your Va-
 “ lour, and follow me through the En-
 “ mies Ranks, that, if Fortune favours

“ us, we may either kill or take *Petreius* Prisoner.” Immediately after they clapped Spurs to their Horses, and rushed furiously into the midst of the *Romans*, where *Boso* no sooner spy’d *Petreius*, but he ran in upon him, and seizing him by the Collar, pulled him down to the Ground, according to the Project he had formed. This put the whole Army in an Uproar, the *Romans* running from all Quarters to rescue their General, and the *Britons* in like manner to assist *Boso*. Thus both Parties signalized themselves in a very extraordinary manner; the *Britons* with a Prospect to take *Petreius* Prisoner, and the *Romans* to save him. But he was carried off at last in spite of the utmost Efforts of the *Romans*, who being dishearten’d at this unexpected Accident, began to give Ground, and betake themselves to flight. The *Britons* pursued them with great Order, and took a great Number of Prisoners with a Design to carry them as the Trophy of their Victory to the King. Accordingly, they returned back to the Camp, to acquaint *Arthur* with their good Success, and present

*Petreius Cotta
taken Prisoner.*

The HISTORY of

sent before him *Petreius Cotta*, with the the rest of the Captives. *Arthur* received the *British* Officers with abundance of *Cares*, and as a Reward for their Exploits, conferred on them great Honours. They were likewise applauded by all the Generals, and the whole Army testified their Satisfaction with loud Acclamations.

AFTER this, *Arthur* ordered the Prisoners to be sent the next Day under a Guard to *Paris*, where they were to be confined till farther Orders. It is said, that while they were on their Way thither, a considerable Body of *Romans*, which lay in Ambush, rushing out all on a sudden, fell upon them so briskly, that the *Britons* must inevitably have perished, had not *Guitard*, General of the *Pictavians* who happening to get Intelligence of their Danger, hastened to their Assistance. He advancing at the Head of three thousand Men, fell upon the Enemy in the Rear, with such Vigour and Resolution, that after a most obstinate Dispute, they put them to flight. In the beginning of the Action
four

four *British* Noblemen, of distinguished Valour, fell Sword in hand *. And, now the *Britons* having gained the Victory, marched without Fear or Danger, with their Prisoners to *Paris*. These repeated Overthrows so dishearten'd *Lucius*, the Roman General, that he began to dread the Issue of a general Engagement with *Arthur*. Wherefore he design'd to retire to *Augustodunum*, till such Time as he was supplied with fresh Succours from *Rome*.

ARTHUR having timely Notice of his Design, marched in all haste towards the Valley of *Suesia*, through which *Lucius* was to pass. Here he was resolved to wait for the Enemy, and accordingly he divided his Army into several Bodies, being unwilling to put all to the Chance of one Battle. The Infantry was according to the Custom of the *Britons* drawn out into a Square, with a Right and Left Wing. Au-
P 3 gusel,

* *Hirelgas*, *Mauricius Cadocanensis*, *Aliduc* of *Tintagol*, and *Hider* his Son.

gusel, King of *Albania*, commanded the Right Wing; *Cador*, Duke of *Cornwal*, the Left. *Morsuid*, Consul of *Gloucester*, headed one Legion, as a Body of Reserve, to succour those who should most want it. Another Party were under the Command of the two famous Consuls *Gwerinus Carnotensis*, and *Boso* of *Oxford*. The third, under *Aschillius*, King of the *Dacians*, and *Lot*, King of the *Norwegians*. The fourth, under the Command of *Hoel* Duke of *Armorica*, and *Galgan* the King's Nephew. After these, were four other Bodies placed in the Rear, and behind these Divisions, *Arthur* posted himself at the Head of a Legion, consisting of six thousand, six hundred and sixty-six Men, having set up a golden Dragon as a Standard, where they were to retreat in case of any Misfortune. After he had thus drawn up his Army, he harangued them according to Custom, encouraging them to exert themselves in the approaching Battle, and maintain that Glory, which they had already acquired. His Speech inspired the whole Army with great Ardour, which was expressed with

one Voice, that they would conquer or die. In the mean time, *Lucius* had began his March at the Head of a numerous Army, and was advanced as far as *Lengria*, where he was informed both of *Arthur's* Approach and Design. However, thinking it would be disreputable in him either to retire, or to shun an Engagement, he roused up all that was manly in his Soul, and marched out of *Lengria* to the Valley where *Arthur* waited for him.

W H E N he had disposed his Troops in order of Battle, " he encouraged them in " a Speech, to behave like *Romans*; re- " minding them of their ancient Glory, " and Victories of old. That the *Britons* " were possessed with Fierceness and Rage, " in the beginning of a Battle; but if they " withstood the first Shock, Victory would " undoubtedly incline to their Side." Having thus spoke, he ordered his Men to advance against the Enemy, who firmly stood their Ground ready to receive them. Both Armies engaged for a considerable Time with great Fury and Resolution, and

*Lucius Tib-
erius being kill'd
the Britons ob-
tain the Vic-
tory.*

*Modred in
League with
Saxons.*

His Treachery.

Victory continued long doubtful: But in the mean time *Morvid*, Earl of *Gloucester*, arriving with his Body of Reserve, fell upon the Enemy in the Rear, put them to flight, and made a dreadful havock of them. *Lucius* their General, with several Thousands, were slain in this Action. And *Arthur* obtained a signal Victory, tho' not without Loss on his Side. After he had ordered his own Dead to be buried, he gave Orders to the Peasants to do the same Office for the Enemy, and to carry the Body of *Lucius* to the Senate, and to let them know, that was the only Tribute *Britain* ought to pay them. The Bodies of his Nobility he took care to send to the Abbies of their respective Countries there to be honourably interred. After this important Victory, he spent the whole Winter in reducing the Cities of the *Allobroges*, and early next Summer he set out for *Rome*. As he was on his March thither he received a Message from *Britain*, which gave him an Account of the base Treachery of his Nephew *Modred*, to whose Care he had committed what was

most

most precious to him. This Traytor, finding the Wife and Kingdom of his Uncle in his Power, had an eager Desire for both, and began to entertain Thoughts, not only of ascending the Throne, but also of gaining the Possession of the Queen. And as he could not compass his wicked Designs, without the Friendship of the Saxons, he prevailed upon the Saxon Princes to engage in his Interest. The Saxons ever intent on improving all Opportunities to their Advantage, readily laid hold of this, to insinuate themselves with all the Civilities imaginable, into the favour of *Modred*, who in requital gave them several Counties, and entered into a strict Alliance with them. The Treaty being executed, *Modred* was crowned at *London*. Tho' several privately abhorred his treacherous and base Actions, yet no one durst openly oppose it, for fear of being demolished before the Return of their lawful Prince. *Arthur* no sooner re-
Arthur re-
turns.
ceived Intelligence of these Proceedings, but he was forced to drop his Enterprize against *Leo* King of the *Romans*, and march with the utmost Expedition to *Britain*.
On

*And defeats
Modred.*

On his Return he landed his Men at the Port of *Rutupi*, where he found *Modred* with an Army of eighty thousand Men ready to engage him. Whereupon a bloody Battle ensued, in which *Augustel* King of *Albania*, and *Galgan* a Knight of King *Arthur*, with many others fell. But at length *Arthur* having gained the Shore, engaged the Enemy on firm Ground, and put them to flight. For tho' his Troops were much fewer, than those of his Enemies, yet what he wanted in Strength and Number, he made up by his Valour and Experience. Notwithstanding this Defeat, the treacherous *Modred* soon got his Forces together again, and retired with them in the Night to *Winchester*. Queen *Guentiofar* upon the News of this Overthrow left *York* with hurry and precipitation, making all the haste she could towards the City of *Legions*, i. e. *Caer Leon*, where she determined to put herself into the Nunnery, in the Church of *Julius* the Martyr, and dedicate the rest of her Time to Heaven. *Arthur* being intirely bent upon finding out *Modred*, followed him to
Winchester

Winchester, and forced him to an Engagement, wherein many fell on both Sides; but at last, *Modred* was routed with great Loss.

ARTHUR, though Victorious, was nevertheless very uneasy to see the Usurper so often make his Escape, he therefore resolved to pursue him, into what Part soever of the Island he should retire. And accordingly he pursued him from Place to Place, and drove him to the very Confines of *Cornwal*, where it was impossible for him to avoid an Engagement. This last Battle was fought by the River *Cambalan*, near *Camel's Ford*, which both Parties maintain'd with equal Vigour, till the Uncle and Nephew met, and determined the Victory by a furious Combat. *Arthur*, though greatly advanced in Years, fell like a Lion on his Nephew, and soon laid him dead on the Ground. The *Britons*, in the mean time, being animated by the Example of the brave *Arthur*, behaved with incredible Valour, and made a great Slaughter of the Enemy. For on *Modred's* Side fell four

The last Battle, wherein Modred is slain, and Arthur mortally wounded, 542.

Saxon

Saxon, and four *Irish* Commanders, and some Thousands of *Scots* and *Picts*, with almost all their Leaders. On *Arthur's* Side, *Oltrict* King of *Norway*, *Afcbillius* King of *Dacia*, *Cador Limenic Cassivellawn*, *Llawhir*, with many Thousands of others, some *Britons* and some Foreigners, whom the King had brought along with him. After this Victory, the renowned *Arthur*, who was dangerously wounded, was carried to *Glassenbury* to be cured of his Wounds, where he soon after died, in the ninetieth Year of his Age, seventy-six of which he had spent in the continual Exercise of military Exploits *.

THIS

* *Gildas* says, After the *Saxons* had received that great Defeat at *Badon*, they lay still for many Years; whereupon the *Britons* fell into Civil Diffensions, which gave the *Saxons* an Opportunity of bringing a great Part of *Britain* under their Subjection. Hence 'tis evident, that the *Saxons* did not conquer the *Britons* by their superiour Courage, but by that Weakness into which their own Divisions had brought them.

THIS Heroick Prince, was of an extraordinary Size, and great Strength of Body, of undaunted Boldness, and great Experience in the Art of War. He had commanded with great Reputation in the Wars of *Armorica*, and by his single Abilities had enabled his Country to defend itself, for many Years, against the whole Force of the *Saxons*.

WHEN he found himself past Recovery, resign'd the Crown to his Kinsman *Constantine*, Son of *Cador*, Duke of *Cornwal*, preferring him before the Sons of his Nephew *Modred*, which occasion'd several bloody Battles. *Arthur* was buried in the Monastery at *Glassenbury*, and it is said, that upon a Search made by the order of King *Henry II.* his Coffin, which was of hallowed Oak, and Bones, and over them a Stone and a Cross, leaded with a very legible Inscription, was found very deep in the Ground, between two Pyramids.

Hic

*Hic jacet Sepultus Inclitus Rex Arthurus, in Insula Avaloniæ, cum Wen-
vara Uxore sua 2da.*

THE Affairs of the *Britons* began to be suddenly and sorely disturbed after the Death of *Arthur*, for they were no longer in a Condition to oppose the growing Power of the *Saxons*. It can't be denied, but the *Saxons* had also suffer'd considerably by the many Battles fought between the two Nations; yet the Circumstances of these two People were very unequal: What Losses the *Saxons* suffered, were soon repaired by the daily Arrival of fresh Supplies from *Germany*. But one may easily conceive, the *Britons* receiving no Succours from abroad, must necessarily be drained by the War, which had been for many Years carried on between them and the *Saxons*.

NOTWITHSTANDING the Weakness of their Condition, we find them in the Year 552, attempting to recover Part of that Coun-

Country, from *Cenrick* King of *Wessex*, which his Father had taken from them. With this View they had advanced as far as *Salisbury*, where they were defeated in a general Engagement *.

Constantine King of Britain, called by the Britons Cystennin Goronawg.

ABOUT three Years after this, two Sons of *Modred*, being assisted by the Saxons, attempted to deprive *Constantine* of the Kingdom left him by *Arthur*. But *Constantine* made such a vigorous Defence, that, in all the Battles they fought, they could not by any Efforts make him give way; on the contrary they were themselves put to a precipitous Flight.

He meets with Disturbances from the Saxons, and Modred's Sons.

THE two Brothers took different Routs, the one to *London*, and the other to *Winchester*, and took Sanctuary therein. Thither

Con-

* About this time died *Daniel* Bishop of *Bangor*, and was buried in the Isle of *Bardsey*.

And *David* Archbishop of *Menevia*, now *St. David's*. He is said to have lived 146 Years; he was buried at *Menevia*.

Constantine
kills Modred's
Sons.

Constantine pursued them, and vented his Rage upon them in a barbarous manner; neither the Sanctity, nor the Privilege of those Places were able to protect them from the Fury of his Resentment; for he stabbed them at the Feet of the Altars, the one in the Church of St. *Amphibalus* in *Winchester*, the other in a Monastery at *London*. About three Years after, we are told, this cruel Deed drew down the just Vengeance of God upon him, he being slain by *Conan*, and buried near *Ambrosius* and *Utber*, within the Giants Dance, now *Stone-benge* *. He was the last Prince of the *Cornwal* Family, who bore the regal Dignity,

* *Constantine* is said, by the *Scottish* Writers, to grow weary of Government, retire from the World, and take on him the Habit of Religion.

Gildas Badonicus having retired from his native Country to *Armorica*, wrote thence his sharp Epistle to his Countrymen the *Britons*; wherein he inveighs with great Bitterness against some of them, and even Princes, especially those of the *Cornwal* Family.

He flourished, *A. D.* 580. and died at *Bangor*, in the 90th Year of his Age.

Dignity, tho' his Issue continued for a long time Dukes of *Cornwal.*

HE was succeeded by his Nephew *Aurelius Conan*, who being of a warlike and ambitious Temper, was not satisfied with the Kingdom, which his Father had left him, but he resolved to seize the Monarchy of the whole Island. In order to facilitate his Design, he fomented Divisions and raised a powerful Faction against his Uncle, whom he secured, and threw into Prison. His two Sons had the Misfortune likewise to fall into the Hands of the Usurper, and was afterwards put to Death, judging this Sacrifice was absolutely necessary to his own Safety. However, God did not suffer him long to enjoy the Monarchy, for he died in the second Year of his Reign.

Aurelius Conan King of Great Britain, or CynanWel-dic.

VORTIPORE, King of *Demetia*, now *South-Wales*, succeeded peaceably to the Throne, and shewed himself worthy of that supreme Dignity which had been given him; for he not only defeated the Saxons,

Vortipore chosen King of Britain.

Q

but

but also established Peace and good Order in the State *. He reigned four Years, and

* In this Reign flourished the famous Poets *Melkin* and *Talieffin*, commonly called *Talieffin Ben Beridb*, i. e. the chiefest of the *Beridh* or *Wisemen*, *Protovates*. His Writings, which consist of different Treatises on various Subjects, are still extant in *Wales*, and preserved by *Mr. Vaughan* of *Hengurt*. Their Titles, suited to the Subject of which they treat, may not be unacceptable to the Reader.

1. *Ymddidban rhung myrdhin q Talieffin*, or *ben Paul ym Bangor*, A Discourse between *Merlin Sylvester* and *Talieffin* in metrical Compositions, answering one another by Turns, recited at *Bangor*.

2. *Marunad Milveib*, a funeral Poem on the 1000 Infants.

3. *Byarth Beirth*, a Poem on the Court-yard of the Bards.

4. *Adbyryne*, a Poem on Ornaments.

5. *Angar Kyryndod*, on an hurtful Confederacy.

6. *Rbayode*, on Impediments or Hindrances.

7. *Mab-gyffre*, on the Elements.

8. *Daronvy*.

9. *Glassnaud*, a Poem on the Encomiast.

10. *Kadeir*, on a Chair.

11. *Kany y Guynt*, an Ode on the Wind.

and was succeeded by *Maglocune*, or rather *Maelgun Gwynnedd*, King of North-Wales, and eldest Son of *Caswallon law hir*, i. e. long-handed. The Sons of *Cunetha Weledig*, having left Cumberland, and the adjacent Countries which they governed, to the Care of one of their Family, withdrew

Maelgun
Gwynnedd
chosen King of
Britain.
A. D. 580.

Q 2

drew

12. *Kany y Medh*, an Ode on Mead or Methelin.

13. *Kany y Kuruv*, an Ode on Ale or Beer.

14. *Plae yr Aight*, a Poem on the Egyptian Plague.

15. *Trausgany Kynan Garvyn*, a Satyr on Conan Garvyn.

16. *Lbarb. Moeser*, of Moses's Rod.

17. *Gpaith argoed Lhuyveia*.

18. *Yspail Taliesin*, Taliesin's Booty.

19. *Dadulack Urien*, the Amends of Urien Reged.

20. *Marunad Dylan Eilton*, an Elegy on Tolan Eilton.

21. *Marunad Owen ab Urien*, an Elegy on Owen Son of Urien.

22. *Marunad Uther*, an Elegy on Uther Pendragon.

23. *Gorchan Kynvelin*, the Charm of one Cunobelin,

24. *Gorchan Maelderu*, the Charm of Maelderovius.

drew to *North-Wales*, their Grandmother's Country : One of whom was this *Caswallon*, who fought and routed the *Irish Picts*, at a Place called *Llan y Gwyddel*, now *Holy-Head* in *Anglesey*, killing their Captain *Sirigi* with his own Hand, and compelling the rest to betake themselves to their Ships.

MAELGWYN Gwynedd, is said to have been the handsomest Man in *Britain*, and a Prince of great Strength of Body, generous Disposition, and uncommon Valour. Though he abandoned himself, as *Gildas* says, in the latter Part of his Life, to Debauchery, yet his gallant Behaviour, in several Battles against the *Saxons*, cannot be sufficiently admired and commended. He obliged *Ireland*, *Iceland*, *Gothland*, and the rest of the Countries which King *Arthur* had brought under Subjection, to pay their Tribute.

He resided chiefly in *Caernarvonshire*, at a Place in *Creuddyn*, called now *Bryn*

Eu-

Euryn, or *Lys Maelgwyn*. * This Prince was a Terror to the *Saxons*, and did all that could be done by Man to preserve the *Britons* from impending Ruin. But their Fate was decreed, and this noble Country was destined to undergo an extraordinary Revolution,

* This Prince was commonly called the *Island Dragon*, on Account, as some suppose, of his being born in the Isle of *Anglesey*, and others of his subduing the *Isle of Man*, *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides*. He erected the See of *Bangor* about the Year 550, and died in the Church called *Rose* near his Castle of *Diganeoy*, A. D. 586.

In the Reign of *Maelgwn*, *Gwyned* lived also, *Merlinus Calidonus*, or *Medbyn Willt*, a *Briton*, and a Disciple of the famous *Taliesin*. He is reported to have travelled over all *Britain* and *France*; and to have prophesied many things more truly and more plainly than *Ambrosius Merlin*: To have assisted King *Arthur* at the Battle of *Camlan*, where, by an unfortunate Accident, he killed his Nephew, which so grieved him, that it put him almost beside himself. He afterwards retired from the World, and chose the Woods and unfrequented Places for his Abode. He was buried in the *Isle of Bardesey*.

*Careticus or
Heredig made
King of Bri-
tain. A. D.
586.*

lution, and become a Prey to the *Saxons*. For *Careticus*, who succeeded *Maelgwyn*, is represented as a Prince of a very restless and fickle Temper, which rendered him odious to the *Britons*. This the *Saxons* were sensible of, and thence conceived Hopes of conquering all *Britain*, a Thing they had long set their Hearts on. To this End, they invited one *Gormundus*, King of the *Africans*, who was then subduing *Ireland*, to come and join them.

GORMUNDUS, who wanted not much Solicitation to engage in this Enterprize, readily complied with their Desire. And accordingly set sail with a great Fleet for *Britain*, where, entering into a strict League with the *Saxons*, he afterwards made War upon King *Careticus*, and determined to drive him quite out of his Dominions. The *Britons*, tho' assaulted thus unexpectedly, and extremely weakened by domestick Divisions, defended themselves however for some time, with great Courage and Intrepidity. But being over-powered by Numbers, they were at length entirely

rout-

routed, and *Caraticus* forced to fly to *Cirencester*, where he was immediately besieged; escaping however from thence, he fled beyond the *Severn* into *Wales*.

AFTER this Victory, the Conquerors marched to the adjacent Cities, pillaged and reduced them to Heaps of Rubbish. In short, they set no Bounds to their Devastations, putting all to Fire and Sword without Mercy, if any Attempts were made to oppose them. Under these Calamities the unhappy *Britons* had no other Resource, being pressed on every Side by powerful Enemies, but to quit their native Country, and retire into *Cymri*, where some of their Brethren were already settled. Some continued in *Cornwal*, whose Dukes never submitted to the *Saxons* during the Heptarchy; others passed over into *Armorica*; but the greatest Part, together with the Archbishops of *London* and *York*, and all the inferior Clergy, withdrew into *Cymri*. *Kymly* here joining with the ancient Inhabitants, they made a long and glorious Defence, under
the

the Conduct of the Princes of the *Cynethian* Family, against the encroaching Attempts of the *Saxons*, and preserved not only their own Country, but also a great Part of *Chehire*, and *Cumberland*, from the Ravages and Spoils of these barbarous Invaders.

The End of the FIRST VOLUME.



bian
apts
heir
of
Ra-
In-